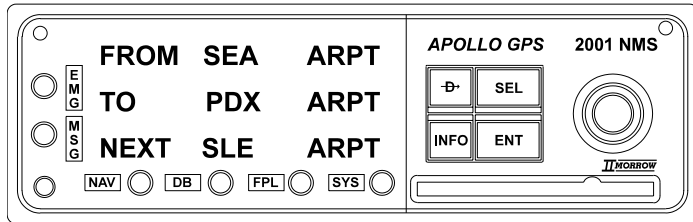
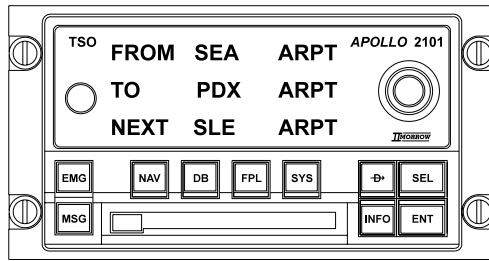


Apollo NMC

Navigation Management Computer Operating Manual



II MORROW

VISIONARY THINKING TODAY



July 1999

P/N 560-0164-01b



NAVNET™ is a trademark of II Morrow Inc.
II Morrow™ is a trademark of II Morrow Inc.
Apollo® is a registered trademark of II Morrow Inc.

© 1999 by II Morrow Inc. All rights reserved.
Printed in the U.S.A.

II Morrow Inc./UPS Aviation Technologies, Inc.
Commercial Products Division
2345 Turner Road S.E.
Salem, OR 97302 U.S.A.

View our Web page: <http://www.iimorrow.com> or [upsat.com](http://www.upsat.com)
Email your comments about this manual to:
<http://www.techpubs@at.ups.com>

U.S.A. Toll-Free	800.742.0077
Canada Toll-Free	800.654.3415
International	503.391.3411
FAX	503.364.2138

Caution

The Apollo NMS (Navigation Management System) is a powerful navigation tool, but you should never rely solely on any one piece of navigation equipment. It's important to maintain a constant awareness of the navigation picture by using all appropriate resources.

Your new NMC and peripheral sensors should be installed only by an FAA certified facility. Each installation is unique, and there are several variables and cautions that an installer must deal with for you to get the maximum benefit from your Apollo NMS.

Important Notice

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is operated by the United States Department of Defense which is solely responsible for the accuracy, daily operation, and maintenance of the satellite constellation. System accuracy is affected by the Department of Defense's Selective Availability (SA) and the Dilution of Precision (DOP) attributed to poor satellite geometry.

Due to implementation of Selective Availability by the United States Department of Defense (DoD), all GPS receivers may suffer degradation of position accuracy. The DoD has stated that 95% of the time horizontal accuracy will not be degraded more than 100 m and 99.9% of the time accuracy will not be degraded more than 300 m.

Installations of TSO C-129a authorized GPS Navigation Management Systems (NMS) may be approved for supplemental navigation only. The NMS may be used as the primary navigation data display, however, other means of navigation appropriate to the intended route of flight must be installed and operational. It is not required that these other systems be monitored.

FCC Notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference during residential use. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.

Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by II Morrow Inc. could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

DOC Notice

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the radio interference regulations of the Canadian Department of Communications.

Le présent appareil numérique n'émet pas de bruits radioélectriques dépassant les limites applicables aux appareils numériques de classe B prescrites dans le règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique édicté par le ministère des communications du Canada.

History of Revisions



Revision Date	Software Ver.	Manual P/N
April 1996		560-0164-00
December 1996		560-0164-00A
June 1997		560-0164-01
March 1998	6.1	560-0164-01A
July 1999	6.3	560-0164-01B

Preface

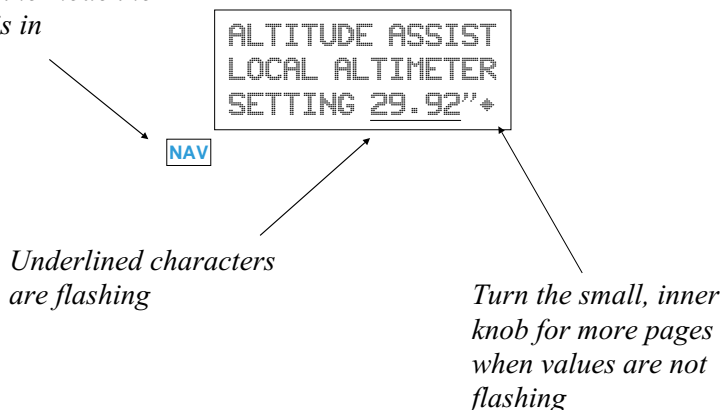
Conventions Used in This Manual

The Action (left) column depicts the steps involved in each procedure. This column can be used by itself as a quick reference for pilots already familiar with the system. The Explanation (right) column contains an explanation of each step along with a sample of the NMS display you will see while performing the procedure.

*In this example the action is
“Press the **SEL** button and
turn the Small knob”*

<u>Action</u>	<u>Explanation</u>
2.  	Pressing SEL activates editing. The altimeter value flashes. Turn the small knob to select the desired value.

*Depicts the mode the
system is in*

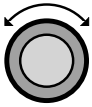


Conventions Used in This Manual (continued)

SEL Text in all caps and bold indicates the button to press.

NAV Normal text in all caps indicates an operation mode, such as Navigation mode.

“Airport” Text in quotes indicates information you will see on the NMS display.



Large knob refers to turning the large, outer ring of the two concentric knobs.



Small knob refers to turning the small, inner ring of the two concentric knobs.



The button graphics refer to the buttons you should press for the given examples.



Round button graphics refer to the mode buttons to press for the examples.

Audience

This manual has been prepared with the following assumptions:

You are familiar with navigation instruments and displays

The approach and instrument navigation descriptions assume you are familiar with instrument navigation charts and procedures

Welcome ...

Welcome to a new era of navigation. Once again, II Morrow Inc. has set new standards in features and ease of use for the aviation industry. The Apollo NMC is unequalled in providing the features, level of performance, and reliability that aviation users require. The Apollo NMC sets a precedent that will be the standard that all other navigation instruments will be compared to. You can be confident in knowing that you are the owner of the state-of-the-art in navigation. Our products are built to last and to allow for upgrading as your needs change in the future.

It is important to note that only version 5.0, or later version, of the Apollo NMC may be used for IFR GPS approach navigation. You can determine your version by either the part number on the unit or in the System Mode software version display.

Thank you again for choosing II Morrow to supply solutions to your navigation needs.

About This Manual

Please take a few moments to review the various sections of this manual. Even if you are an experienced user of GPS navigation, be sure to read the Basic Concepts and First Flight sections. These two sections provide the rules for successful use of the Apollo NMC. The rest of the manual contains important information that you can refer to as you need more detail on specific procedures or features.

Table of Contents

Caution	2
History of Revisions	ii
Preface	iii
Conventions Used in This Manual	iii
Audience	iv
Welcome	i
About This Manual	ii
Basic Concepts	1
Apollo Navigation Management System	1
Displays, Lights, and Controls	2
Power Switch	2
LED Display	2
Knobs	2
Action Buttons	3
Mode Buttons	4
EMG (Emergency) Mode	4
MSG (Message) Mode	4
NAV (Navigation) Mode	4
DB (Database) Mode	4
FPL (Flight Plan) Mode	5
SYS (System) Mode	5
Features	5
Operating Logic	7
First Flight	9
Power-Up	9
Direct Navigation	9
Navigation Displays	13
Power-Up Sequence.	15
EMG (Emergency) Mode.	25
EMG (Emergency) Mode Organization	26
Emergency Mode Displays	27

Table of Contents

Apollo NMC

EMG Mode Procedures	30
Emergency Search/Direct-To Navigation	30
Searching Around a Waypoint	33
Setting Runway Limits	36
MSG (Message) Mode	39
Message Displays	40
Viewing Messages	41
Displaying SUA (Special Use Airspace) Information	58
NAV (Navigation) Mode	61
NAV Displays	63
Top-Level Nav Displays	63
Navigation Sub-Displays	68
Eight Character Nav Items	70
Sixteen Character Nav Items	71
RAIM Predict Ignore List Sub-Displays	77
Clear RAIM Predict Ignore List	77
NAV Mode Procedures	79
Displaying Nav Information	79
Starting/Stopping Auto Nav Scroll	79
Displaying Present Position	80
Selecting a Position Sensor	81
Automatic and Manual Position Sensor Selection	82
Clear RAIM Predict Ignore List	86
Altitude Sensor Selection	87
Setting the Altimeter (Barometric Pressure)	89
Setting/Editing Hold and Buffer Altitudes	90
Starting/Stopping Altitude Hold	91
Setting/Editing Auto Descent Values	93
Starting/Stopping Auto Descent	98
Parallel Course Offset	99
Activating/Deactivating/Editing Parallel Course Offset	99
Manual Air Speed	101
Countdown Timer	102
Setting/Starting the Countdown Timer	102
DME Arc Assist	103

Waypoint Distance Page	103
Waypoint ETE Page	103
From-To-Next Waypoint ETA Page	104
Using the From/To/Next Nav Page.	104
Inserting and Editing a From/To/Next Waypoint	104
Hold/Continue the From/To/Next Sequencing.	106
DB (Database) Mode	107
Databases.	109
Airport Database	109
VOR/NDB/Intersection Databases	109
User Database	109
Database Information.	110
Airport Database	110
VOR/NDB/INT (Intersection) Databases	111
User Database	111
Database Displays	112
DB Mode Procedures	115
Retrieving a Waypoint	115
Waypoint Retrieval by Identifier	115
Retrieving a Waypoint by City/Facility Name	118
Waypoint Information and Comments	121
Displaying Waypoint Information	121
Entering/Editing Waypoint Comments.	122
Deleting a Waypoint Comment.	125
User Waypoints.	127
Creating a User Waypoint by Latitude/Longitude	127
Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance.	130
Editing a User Waypoint	135
Deleting a User Waypoint	139
FPL (Flight Plan) Mode	141
Flight Plan Summary Pages.	143
Creating a Flight Plan	144
Inserting and Editing Flight Plan Legs	145
Manually Selecting a Flight plan Leg	147

Table of Contents

Apollo NMC

Updating Leg Information 148

Leg Information Options 148

 FUEL AT. 151

Using Flight Plan Comments 151

Accessing Flight Plan Summary Options 153

Using Flight Plan Summary Options 154

 Activate? 154

 Load Approach 154

 Cancel Oceanic 158

Direct-To and the Active Flight Plan 159

System (SYS) Mode 161

 System Mode 162

SYS Mode Displays 163

 Top-Level Displays 163

 Navigation Info Sub-State Displays 164

 System Info Sub-State Displays 167

 Miscellaneous Sensors Sub-State Displays 174

Navigation Information Sub-State 179

 Airspace Alert Settings 181

 Setting the Auto Nav Scroll Time 185

 Programmable and Autonav Nav Pages 186

 Restoring Default Nav Displays 190

 Manually Entering Magnetic Variation 191

 Changing the Oceanic Activation Altitude 194

 Editing the Flight Timer Trigger Speed 195

 Display Units 196

 Description of the Direct-To Entry Option 197

 Editing the Direct-To Entry Option 198

 CDI Scaling 199

System Information Sub-State 201

 Setting the Time and Date 203

 Choosing the Fuel Measure Units 205

 Choosing the Barometric Pressure Units 206

 Activating the Display Test 207

 Displaying Software and Database Versions 208

Entering and Editing Owner Information	209
Position Sensor Sub-State	213
Loran Sensor Sub-State	214
Displaying Position Sensor Information	214
Manual GRI Selection	215
Manual Triad Selection.	216
Miscellaneous Sensor Sub-State	219
Miscellaneous Sensor Sub-State	219
Displaying Miscellaneous Sensor Information.	220
General Approach Overview	221
Approach Topics	235
Manually Selecting a Flight plan Leg	236
Sequencing Details	239
Procedure Turns	241
Procedure Turn at an FAF	242
Holding Patterns	246
DME-ARCs (Arc Assist).	249
Other Uses for the Arc Assist Function	253
Missed Approaches.	254
GPS Approach Operations	259
Operations	259
NMS Approach Procedure	262
En route Operations	262
Approach Transition Operation (Enabling Approach)	264
Canceling An Approach	271
Repeating an Approach.	272
Selecting a Different Approach.	273
Approach Examples	275
Introduction to Primary Oceanic/Remote Airspaces	301
What is Primary Oceanic?	301
Definitions	301
RAIM.	305
What Is Raim?	305
How Is Raim Used?	305

Table of Contents

Apollo NMC

Approach Questions and Answers 311

Troubleshooting 313

 To Ensure Trouble Free Operation 313

 Battery Replacement 313

 If You Have A Problem 313

 If You Are Unable To Correct The Problem 313

 Contacting the Factory for Assistance 318

Glossary 319

GPS Reference 327

 General Information 327

 Accuracy, Error, and Limitations. 328

 Position Fix 330

Apollo NMC Flight Simulator 331

 About the Flight Simulator 331

 NMC Removal (Panel Mount) 332

 NMC Removal (Dzus Mount) 333

 Connecting the Power Supply 334

 Starting the Flight Simulation 335

 Flight Simulator Operations 340

 After the NMC is Re-Installed in the Aircraft 340

**Operating Manual Supplement
for the
Apollo 2002/2102 Keypad 1**

 History of Revisions. 2

 Ordering Information 2

 Warranty Information 2

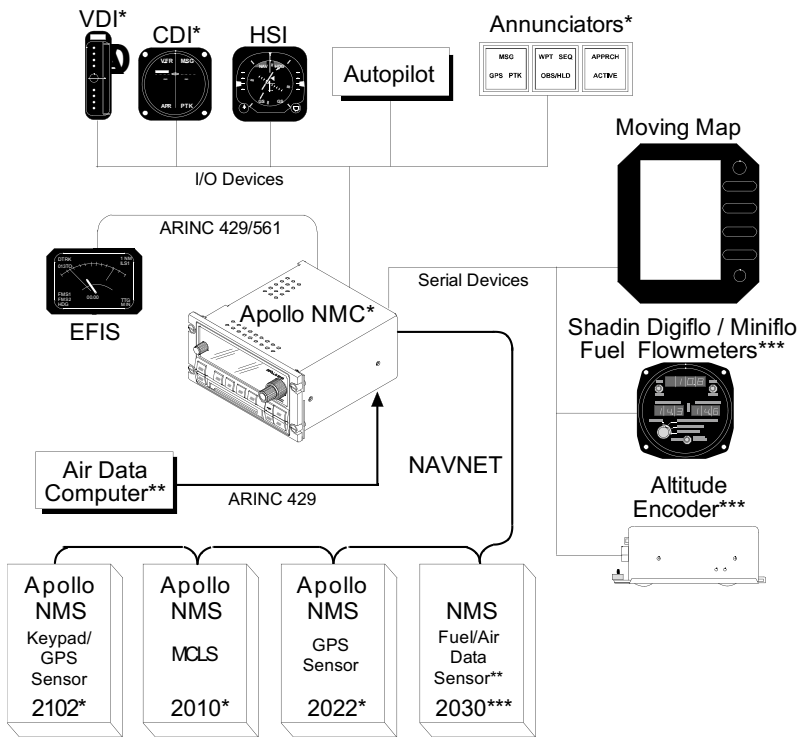
 Using the Keypad 3

 Waypoint Retriever Operation 4

Basic Concepts

The Apollo NMS (Navigation Management System) uses a variety of remote sensors to provide a broad range of information. The “heart” of the system is the NMC (Nav Management Computer). The interface network is called NAVNET™. The NMC interprets data from the sensors to determine position, course, wind, altitude, and fuel information. Some features require specific sensors. For example, Altitude Assist features requires a Fuel/Air Data Sensor, or an altitude encoder. Multiple position sensors and external instruments/annunciators may be used for redundancy. The system approach allows additional components to be added at any time.

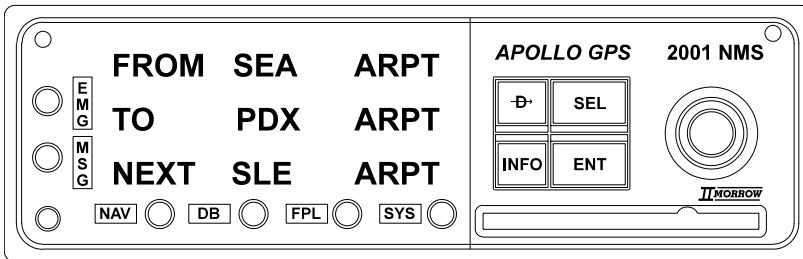
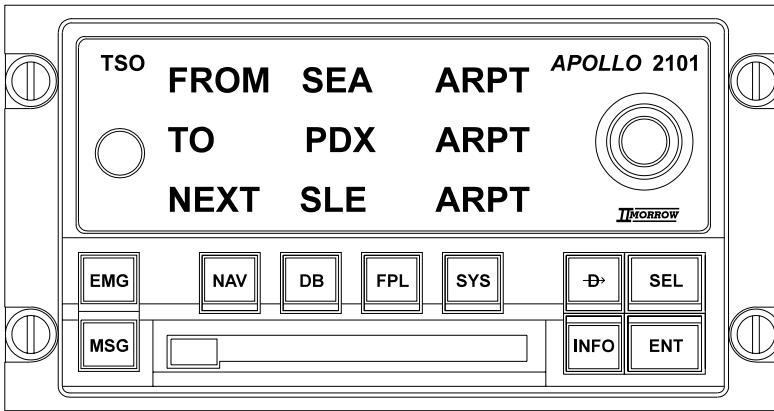
Apollo Navigation Management System



Apollo NMS Sensors

- * Available from Il Morrow Inc. or an authorized dealer
- ** Air Data Computer and Fuel/Air Data Sensors are mutually exclusive and are shown together for illustration only.
- *** Available from ShadinCo.

Displays, Lights, and Controls



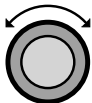
Power Switch

A rotary switch is located on the front panel near the left side of the 2101 NMC. A pull switch is located on the left side of the 2001 NMC.

LED Display

A photocell automatically adjusts the brightness of the LED (Light Emitting Diode) display. The display consists of 3 lines with 16 characters each.


Knobs



The **Large** knob has two functions. First, it is used to scroll through top-level displays in each mode. Second, when part of the display is flashing (i.e., editing is on), the **Large** knob is used to choose which character or characters on the display will flash.

Displays, Lights, and Controls (continued)



The **Small**, inner knob has two functions. First, it is used to scroll through displays that pertain to the top-level displays; that is, when the diamond  appears in the lower right corner of a display. Second, when editing the display, a character (or series of characters), will flash. The **Small**, inner knob is then used to change the flashing character(s) to the desired character(s).

Action Buttons



(Select) The **SEL** button is used to activate editing. Editing is active whenever part of the display is flashing. With some features, editing is automatically activated without pressing **SEL**.



(Information) The **INFO** button accesses supplementary information about the displayed waypoint. It is also used to access flight plan comments that you enter. Pressing this button makes the current mode light flash, indicating you are looking at waypoint or flight plan information. Pressing this button again exits the **INFO** function.



(Enter) The **ENT** button enters and saves the information flashing on the display. If **ENT** is not pressed, any changes made are not saved.



(Direct-To) The **DIRECT-TO** button is used to define a direct course from the present position to any waypoint. The Waypoint Retriever, used to find waypoints in the database, is automatically activated after pressing this button.

Pressing the **DIRECT-TO** button twice is used to enter a desired course to or from the active waypoint. This action automatically suspends waypoint sequencing.

Apollo NMS

Mode Buttons

Pressing a Mode button places the NMC (Nav Management Computer) into that mode. Each mode is used to perform certain types of functions. The NMC is always in one of the six modes, signified by the lighted mode annunciator.

EMG (Emergency) Mode



EMG mode is used to find the nearest waypoints and nearest SUAs (Special Use Airspace areas) to your present position, or to find the closest waypoints to a selected waypoint. Search parameters, such as runway length, may be set so the NMC (Nav Management Computer) only displays airports and User waypoints that are suitable for your aircraft.

MSG (Message) Mode



MSG mode is used to display messages. The NMC (Nav Management Computer) alerts you to important conditions, such as arrival at a waypoint, or degraded position accuracy. The MSG light flashes when a new message condition occurs, and is lit solid if any messages you have already viewed remain.

NAV (Navigation) Mode



NAV mode is used to display navigation information, such as the bearing, distance, and ETE (Estimated Time En route) to the *To* waypoint. NAV mode may also provide Altitude Assist features, Parallel Track, Current Position Sensor information, a Countdown Timer, and From, To, Next waypoint access.

DB (Database) Mode



DB mode is used to access waypoints stored on a datacard, and to create, store, and edit up to 200 User waypoints.

Modes (continued)

FPL (Flight Plan) Mode

FPL

FPL mode is used to create, store, view, and edit up to 29 flight plans of up to 20 legs each and to edit the Active flight plan. It can also provide advance information about ETE, ETA, Fuel Usage, and other important flight statistics. An approach is a set of waypoints inserted into the active flight plan.

SYS (System) Mode

SYS

SYS mode is used to make certain settings and adjustments to the system, such as adjusting the Time and Date, Fuel Units, and Barometric Units. (Some settings, including Time and Date, may also be adjusted during the start-up sequence). SYS mode also provides status information for position and other sensors.

Features

Below is a brief explanation of the features available with the Apollo NMS.

Direct-To Flights: The NMS can provide course guidance from your location directly to any waypoint in any database.

Data cards: Data cards contain listings of public use Airports, VORs, NDBs, INTs (intersections), airspaces, non-precision approaches, MSA, MESA, and magnetic variation information in the datacard coverage area. The combined coverage area for all of the data cards is world-wide.

Waypoint Information: Each database contains supplementary information about every waypoint. For example, ATC frequencies and available runways may be displayed for airports. Approaches are also stored on the data cards. In addition, bearing and distance from the present position to any waypoint is also available.

Features (continued)

Nearest Waypoint (Emergency) Search: The NMS finds the 20 nearest waypoints of each type. The pilot can choose any of these waypoints and set a course with the Direct-To feature. The NMC (Nav Management Computer) can be set to display only those Airports and User waypoints which meet your runway length and surface requirements. The NMC can also search for the 20 nearest waypoints around any waypoint, not just your present position.

Messages: The NMC (Nav Management Computer) automatically alerts you of conditions which may require your attention, such as nearing a Special Use airspace. Messages clear automatically, either after they have been viewed, or when the condition clears.

Navigation Information: The NMC (Nav Management Computer) constantly updates a wide variety of navigation information. With the proper sensors installed, this information includes everything from true airspeed to magnetic wind direction. Some information is available only with a specific sensor installed.

Flight Plans: The NMC (Nav Management Computer) allows you to store up to 30 flight plans of up to 20 legs each. These plans may be viewed, activated, reversed, interrupted, edited, and deleted while en route or on the ground. One of these flight plans is the Active flight plan. From the first time a course is entered into the new unit, there is always an Active flight plan. When any of the remaining 29 flight plans is activated, the plan is copied over the current Active flight plan, and the previous Active flight plan is deleted. Any changes to the Active flight plan do *not* affect any of the other stored flight plans. Approaches, when loaded, are placed at the end of the active flight plan, replacing the destination airport.

System Customizing: The NMC (Nav Management Computer) uses factory (default) settings that may be changed. For example, most of the Nav displays may be changed to display the specific navigation information you desire.

Additional Features: Certain additional features, such as Altitude Assist, True Airspeed, and Outside Air Temperature, may be available depending on what specific components are installed.

Operating Logic

Use of the **Waypoint Retriever** is fundamental to operating the NMS. The Waypoint Retriever is used to display specific waypoints, and is discussed in detail in Operations, *Retrieving a Waypoint*.

The Waypoint Retriever is activated automatically when you are using a feature that requires you to display a waypoint. For example, when using the Direct-To feature, which allows you to navigate directly to any waypoint in any database from your present position, pressing the **DIRECT-TO** button activates the Waypoint Retriever. In effect, pressing **DIRECT-TO** “tells” the system you want to navigate directly to some specific location.

The system responds to your command by activating the Waypoint Retriever. This is the system’s way of asking, “where do you want to navigate to?” A display, similar to the one below, appears. In this manual, black characters, such as the “A” in the display below, indicate the item is flashing, and editing is activated.

A	I	R	P	O	R	T	A	A	P
H	O	U	S	T	O	N			
C	I	T		T	X		U	S	A

Whenever something on the display is flashing, it may be changed by turning the **Small** knob. To make something else on the display flash, turn the **Large** knob. The display shows the waypoint identifier and the database containing the waypoint. In this example, the waypoint AAP, located in the city Houston, Texas USA, is an Airport— i.e. is contained in the Airport database. If the location you want to fly to is also an airport, it is not necessary for you to change the waypoint type; simply turn the **Small** knob to display first character in the waypoint identifier, then turn the Large knob one increment clockwise to make the next character flash. Use the knobs to choose the remaining characters in the identifier, until the desired waypoint is displayed.

A	I	R	P	O	R	T		C	B	K
C	O	L	B	Y						
C	I	T					K	S		U

Operating Logic (continued)

If you wanted to fly to a different waypoint type, such as a VOR, you would begin by changing the type. Turn the **Large** knob until the waypoint type flashes.

<u>AIRPORT</u>	AAP
HOUSTON	
CITY	TX USA

Select a different waypoint type by turning the **Small** knob.

VOR	<u>ABA</u>
ARUBA	
FACIL	ANTILL

Turning the **Large** knob counter-clockwise causes the identifier to again flash.

VOR	<u>ABA</u>
ARUBA	
FACIL	ANTILL

Use the knobs to choose the remaining characters in the identifier, until the desired waypoint is displayed.

VOR	<u>CCR</u>
CONCORD	
FACIL	CA USA

The last step is to press the **ENT** button. As far as the system memory is concerned, nothing has changed until **ENT** is pressed. If you did not want to navigate to the displayed waypoint, you would simply press any mode button. Any time you want to abort a procedure, simply press a mode button.

The Waypoint Retriever can also be used to look up waypoints using the city or facility name. Refer to Database Mode, *Retrieving a Waypoint* for full details.

First Flight

WARNING

Before routinely using the Apollo NMS (Nav Management System) in the air, you should be quite familiar with its operation. Federal Aviation Regulations require pilots to practice SEE AND AVOID. It is therefore critical you do NOT study this manual while flying. It is recommended your first flight be made during good weather in a low traffic area. It is important you understand at least the First Flight section before you fly. You may wish to practice at home with the built-in simulator.

Power-Up

After the Nav Management Computer (NMC) is switched on, it initializes its internal circuits. During this approximately 2 second period, the display will remain blank. Following initialization, a power-up sequence begins. After the sequence, the display below appears. If the NMC (Nav Management Computer) has been removed from the panel and used in simulator mode or the unit has moved several hundred mile since the last time it was powered up, your present position must be entered during the power-up sequence. See Operations, *Power-Up Sequence*.

```
ETE ---  --:--  
--NAV FLAGGED--  
BRG ---  --.NM➔
```

NAV

Direct Navigation

This procedure is used to navigate from your present position directly to any waypoint stored in a database. The waypoint you are flying to is called the *To* waypoint. You will use the Waypoint Retriever to display the desired waypoint. The logic used is to:

Press the **DIRECT-TO** button. This activates the Waypoint Retriever.

Select the *TO* waypoint using the **SEL** button and the **Large** and **Small** knobs.

Press **ENT**.

Direct Navigation

Action

Explanation

1.



Underlined characters are flashing

The unit is in NAV mode, and the Waypoint Retriever is activated. The waypoint identifier is flashing.

The system is in (Navigation) mode

NAV

```
AIRPORT      AAF
APALACHICOLA
CITY          FL USA
```

NAV

2.

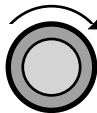


When an item is flashing, turning the **Small** knob displays other available items. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the desired waypoint type. In this example, the VOR type is chosen.

```
VOR          AAF
NABB
FACIL IN USA
```

NAV

3.



Turning the **Large** knob causes different items on the display to flash. Turn the **Large** knob to make the first character in the waypoint ident flash.

```
AIRPORT      AAF
APALACHICOLA
CITY          FL USA
```

NAV

Direct Navigation (continued)

4.

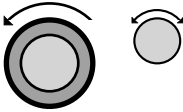


Turn the **Small** knob to choose the desired character. The remaining identifier characters may change as the knob is turned because the NMC (Nav Management Computer) will not display an identifier that doesn't exist.

VOR	DAG
DAGGETT	
FACIL	CA USA

NAV

5.



Turn the **Large** and **Small** knobs to choose the remaining characters in the waypoint identifier. The desired waypoint is displayed.

VOR	DLS
THE DALLES	
FACIL	OR USA

NAV

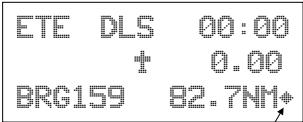
Direct Navigation (continued)

7.

ENT

Press ENT to select the waypoint as the TO waypoint. The MNC will now provide guidance on a course from your present position to the chosen waypoint. Navigation information is only displayed when position sensors have completed acquiring signals.

NAV



```
ETE DLS 00:00
  † 0.00
BRG159 82.7NM
```

Indicates additional displays (sub-pages) may be viewed by turning the **Small** knob.

Navigation Displays

The **Small** knob is used to scroll through the various navigation displays. The diamond (◆) in the lower-right corner indicates there are sub-pages which may be viewed by turning the **Small** knob. In this example, the sub-pages are additional navigation displays.

A brief explanation of these displays appears below. For more detailed information, see the Operations section, Navigation Sub-Displays.

NAV FLAGGED appears on the middle line, and values for bearing (BRG) and distance (NM) are zero until the system calculates position, which takes from one to four minutes after power-up, and a *To* waypoint is entered.

```
ETE DLS 00:31
      ,† 0.26
BRG 165 45.6NM◆
```

TOP LINE: The Estimated Time En route (ETE) to DLS is 31 minutes.

MIDDLE LINE: The CDI indicator (similar to a VOR CDI); The desired course is towards the bar. The selected course is 0.26nm to the left.

BOTTOM LINE: The bearing to DLS is 165°; the distance is 82.7nm.

```
ETE DLS 00:31
      ,† 0.26
DTK 167 72.5NM
```

ETE
CDI

The Desired Magnetic Track from the From waypoint to DLS is 167°. The distance between the FROM and TO waypoints is 82.7nm.

```
ETE DLS 00:31
      ,† 0.26
TRK 164 TAE 003
```

ETE
CDI

The Magnetic Track is 164 the Track Angle Error is 3°.

Navigation Displays (continued)

```
ETE DLS    00:31
  , , †    0.26
FT 00:12  163KTS
```

ETE
CDI

Flight time since departure is 12 minutes; the ground speed is 163 knots.

```
ETE DLS    00:31
  , , †    0.26
TRK 164   165
```

ETE
CDI

The track and bearing indicator. The track is 164°; the current bearing to DLS is 165°. The bearing is displayed to the left or the right side depending on whether the aircraft is to the left or right of the desired course. In this example, the aircraft is to the right of the desired course.

```
ETE DLS    00:31
  , , †    0.26
TRK 164   165
```

ETE
CDI

The current UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) is 14:25 (2:25 pm).

```
ETA DLS    14:56
MIN SAFEA  5700'
ENRTSAFEA 13600'
```

Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) at DLS is 14:56 UTC.
MSA (Minimum Safe Altitude)
MESA (Minimum En route Safe Altitude)

```
BARO ALT  390FT
----' ABOVE HOLD
--:-- TO DESCENT
```

Barometric (Current) Altitude. The distance (in feet) above or below Hold altitude. Time to beginning of Auto descent. When Auto Descent has started, this line displays the distance (in feet) you are above or below the glide path.

If the Fuel/Air Data Sensor is installed on the NMS, three additional pages of navigation information will be available when you turn the Small knob. See *Nav Mode: Navigation Sub-Displays* for more information.

Power-Up Sequence

The power-up sequence is displayed every time the Apollo NMS is turned on. The power-up sequence begins after the NMC completes an approximately 2 second initialization of internal circuits. Following initialization, the sequence will show the owner's name, the database version, the software version, present position, request for altimeter correction factor, and the time/date. It also allows entry of a new time/date and position during the sequence. The NMC will automatically update the time from GPS satellite information at power-up. If a valid datacard is not inserted, you will manually enter the magnetic variation during the power-up sequence for the area you will be flying in. In addition, the NMC displays start-up self-test pages, self-test results, and asks if you want to continue with the last used flight plan.

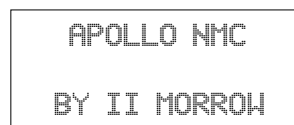
To acquire a position the system must "know" its approximate location and, if using a GPS sensor, the time (UTC Coordinated Universal Time formerly called Greenwich Mean Time).

Hint

The UTC and approximate position should be entered by the installer; in which case, no action is normally required of you during the power-up sequence. As long as the system is functioning when you fly, the NMS will always "know" its position the next time it is powered up; however, if the NMC has been removed from the panel for use in simulator mode, your present position must be entered during power-up after the unit is reinstalled in the aircraft.



Switching the power on starts the power-up sequence.



NAV

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

The Self-Test introductory page is displayed for 2 seconds.

```
STARTING
MEMORY
TESTS ...
```

NAV

The next self-test checks all of the NMC software, and takes about 4 seconds. During this time, the screen shown below is displayed.

```
SOFTWARE TEST
IN PROGRESS
PLEASE WAIT
```

NAV

The next self-test checks the User Waypoint database. If any errors are found, the affected User Waypoints are cleared from memory, and the display shown below is displayed until the user presses **ENT**. If no errors are found, this page is not shown.

```
USER DATABASE
MEMORY FAILURE
PRESS ENT
```

NAV

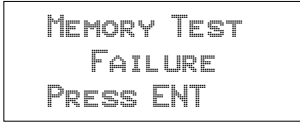
Next, all Flight Plan information is checked. If any errors are found, the affected flight plans are cleared from memory, and the display shown below is displayed until the user presses **ENT**. This page is not shown if no flight plan errors are detected.

```
FLIGHT PLAN
MEMORY FAILURE
PRESS ENT
```

NAV

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

Remaining user-set-ups are tested next, resulting in the following message if errors are detected. Again, this message is not shown in the normal case where no errors are detected.



MEMORY TEST
FAILURE
PRESS ENT

NAV

When the test is completed successfully, the following screen is displayed for 2 seconds.



SOFTWARE TEST
PASSED

NAV

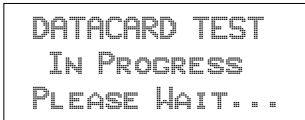
Failure to pass the software test indicates a critical system error may exist. In this case, the following message is displayed and the NMC will not continue to function. If this problem should occur, return the NMC to the dealer for repairs.



SOFTWARE TEST
FAILED
CONTACT DEALER

NAV

If a datacard is in the datacard slot, it is tested next. This test checks all of the datacard memory, taking about 5 seconds to complete. The test is accompanied by the display shown below.



DATACARD TEST
IN PROGRESS
PLEASE WAIT...

NAV

When the test is completed successfully, the following screen is displayed for 2 seconds.

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

```
  DATACARD TEST
  PASSED
```

NAV

Failure to pass the datacard check causes the display to show the next page. The user must then press **ENT** to continue.

```
  DATACARD FAILED
  CONTACT IIMORROW
  PRESS ENT
```

NAV

The Owner Name page is displayed for 2 seconds. The procedure for entering owner information is described in Operations, Entering and Editing Owner Information on page 209.

```
  PROPERTY OF :
  ORVILLE WRIGHT
  KITTY HAWK
```

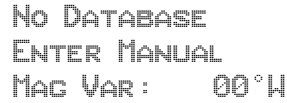
NAV

When a valid datacard is properly inserted in the datacard slot, the database name, expiration date, and version number is displayed for 4 seconds.

```
  WEST NORTH AM DB
  DATE:   3/30/99
  VERSION: 1.11
```

NAV

The display below only appears if the datacard is invalid or not inserted properly. The magnetic variation value (in bold) is flashing. Rotate the **Small** and **Large** knobs to update the magnetic variation for your current position, then press **ENT** to save the displayed value.

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

NO DATABASE
ENTER MANUAL
MAG VAR: 00°W

NAV

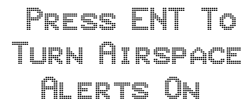
If the Special Use Airspace (SUA) alerts have been turned off (see System Mode for more information on SUA setups), the next screen is displayed for up to 4 seconds.



AIRSPACE ALERT
ARE OFF
SEL TO RESET

NAV

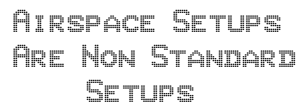
To turn the airspace alerts back on, press **SEL** when the screen shown on the previous page is displayed, then press **ENT** when the screen shown below appears, or press **SEL** to cancel.



PRESS ENT TO
TURN AIRSPACE
ALERTS ON

NAV

If the Special Use Airspace (SUA) setups (restricting which SUA alerts are displayed) have been changed from the standard setups, the screen shown below will be displayed for up to 4 seconds.



AIRSPACE SETUPS
ARE NON STANDARD
SETUPS

NAV

To reset the airspace setups, press **SEL** within 4 seconds, then press **ENT**, as shown on the screen below, or press **SEL** again to cancel.

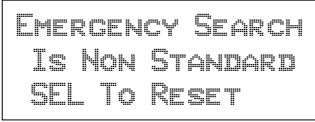
Power-Up Sequence (continued)



PRESS ENT TO
RESET AIRSPACE
SETUPS

NAV

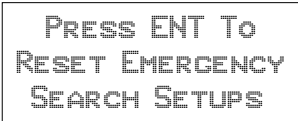
If Emergency Search settings restricting runway lengths and/or surface types and/or lighting requirements are entered, the display below appears for up to 4 seconds.



EMERGENCY SEARCH
IS NON STANDARD
SEL TO RESET

NAV

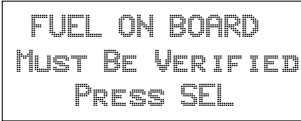
To reset the Emergency Search settings, press **SEL** within 4 seconds, then press **ENT**, as shown on the screen below, or press **SEL** to cancel.



PRESS ENT TO
RESET EMERGENCY
SEARCH SETUPS

NAV

If the 2030 Fuel/Air Data Sensor is installed, the NMC displays the next screen until **SEL** is pressed.



FUEL ON BOARD
MUST BE VERIFIED
PRESS SEL

NAV

Enter the total amount of fuel which is in the airplane's tanks including reserve, by rotating the **Small** and **Large** knobs to edit the displayed values, then press **ENT**. If the cursor is flashing on the word "FULL" when **ENT** is pressed, the amount of fuel displayed will become the maximum amount of fuel previously entered, and the cursor will flash on the number. Pressing **ENT** again will enter the number as the current total fuel on board.

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

If the total fuel entered is greater than previous Full tanks amount, the Full tanks amount is updated to the newly entered value.

The total fuel entered is critical for accurate information to be displayed in the Nav items which depend on F/ADS fuel tank information.

```
ENTER TOTAL FUEL
ON BOARD
FULL OR 00100USG
```

NAV

The Coordinated Universal Time (UTC - formerly called Greenwich Mean Time) and date is displayed for up to 4 seconds.

The UTC may be reset here by pressing **SEL** within 4 seconds, rotating the **Large** and **Small** knobs, and pressing **ENT** to save the displayed values. The UTC may also be reset in System Mode.

If using a GPS sensor, the UTC and date *must* be accurate for the sensor to initialize in less than 30 minutes.

```
DATE: 11 APR 99
TIME: 15:14UTC
SEL TO RESET
```

NAV

The display below, showing the present position in relation to the nearest airport, appears for up to 10 seconds only if a valid datacard is properly installed and the current position is within 600 nautical miles of an airport in the database. Press **SEL** if the current position needs updating.

```
PPOS: 0.0NM 000°
TO NRST WPT PDX
SEL TO RESET
```

NAV

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

If a valid datacard is not installed or the current position is nowhere near an airport in the database, the display below appears instead for up to 10 seconds. Again, press **SEL** to update the current position.

```
Ppos : 38°04.20N
        102°41.28W
SEL To RESET
```

NAV

The displayed position is the location of the aircraft when the power was last turned off; therefore, this position will not normally need to be edited; however, **in order for GPS sensors to initialize, and Ioran sensors to select a GRI, the system *must* “know” its approximate location.**

If the NMC has been removed from the panel for use in Flight Simulator mode, the display below appears after reinstallation in the aircraft, and you must enter a reference position before the power-up sequence will continue. Press **SEL** to update the current position.

```
RESET
PRESENT POSITION
PRESS SEL
```

NAV

Rotate the **Large** and **Small** knobs to edit the values shown below. Press **ENT** when the desired position is entered. Resetting the Present Position (PPos) may be done by updating the latitude and longitude directly, as shown below, or by choosing a reference waypoint as the current position.

```
Ppos : 38°04.20N
        102°41.28W
REF WPT: -----
```

NAV

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

In most cases, updating the present position may be simplified by selecting a Reference Waypoint's position, if the Reference Waypoint is close to the current position. To do this, press **ENT** when the cursor is flashing on the Reference Waypoint field, as shown below.

```
Ppos: 38°04.20N
      102°41.28W
REF WPT:  CHG?
```

NAV

The Waypoint Retriever will be started if **ENT** is pressed when the cursor is flashing on "CHG?", the Reference Waypoint Change field. Refer to the Operating Logic section of Basic Concepts for detailed information on the Waypoint Retriever.

When the desired waypoint has been found using the Waypoint Retriever, press **ENT** to exit the Waypoint Retriever and to display the current position of the retrieved waypoint. If you are satisfied with the present position displayed, press **ENT** again to save it as the NMC's current position.

The final power-up screen, shown below, prompts you to enter a local altimeter setting. This screen is only shown if an Altitude Encoder or a Fuel/Air Data Sensor is installed. Turn the **Small** knob until the setting is correct, then press **ENT**.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92"
```

NAV

```
ETE ---  --:--
--NAV FLAGGED--
BRG ---  -- NM+
```

NAV

Power-Up Sequence (continued)

At the end of the power up sequence, you need to decide if you want to clear the last flight plan from memory. Turn the **Small**, inner knob to display “YES” or “NO.” Then, press **ENT**.

```
CLEAR ACTIVE  
FLIGHT PLAN  
YES?
```

NAV

At this point, the power-up sequence is complete.

```
NORTH AMERICA  
EXPIRES 11/09/95  
PRESS ENT
```

NAV

If your unit is installed for IFR GPS approach navigation, a sequence of IFR output tests will be run to verify CDI and VDI annunciators as well as a display test.

```
STARTING IFR  
OUTPUT TESTS
```

NAV

EMG (Emergency) Mode

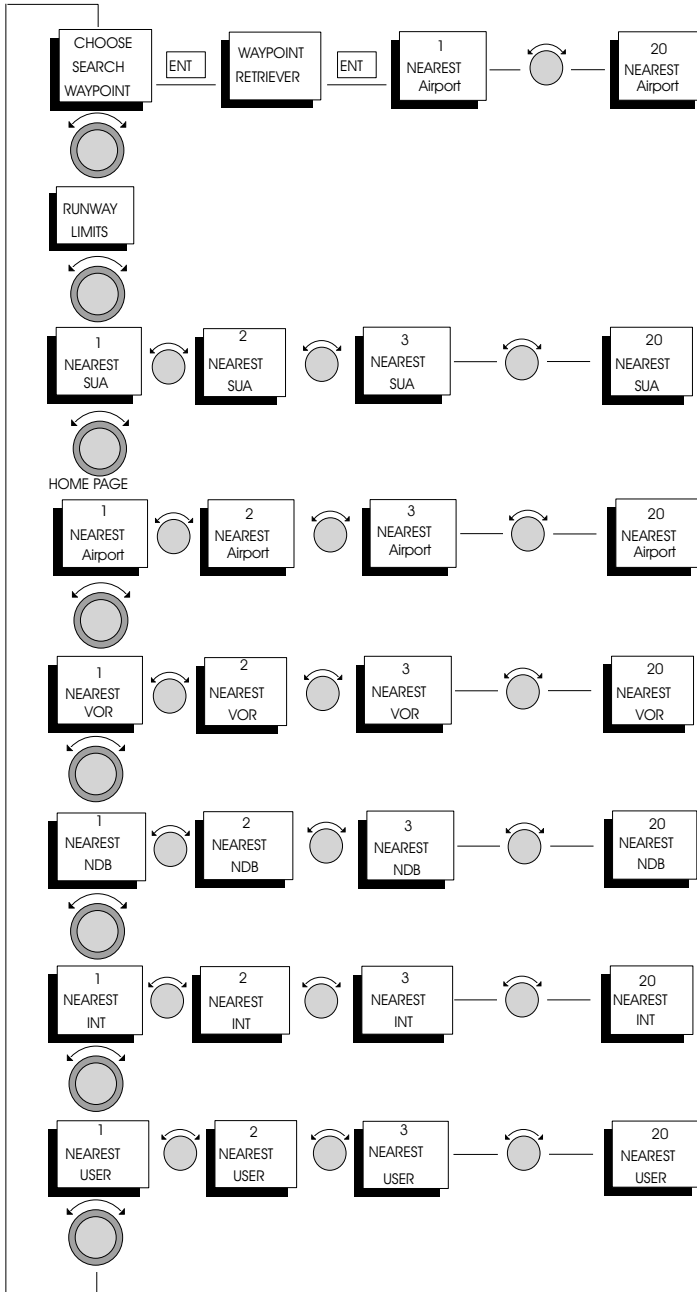
Emergency mode helps you locate nearby waypoints quickly. In addition to being useful in an emergency, this mode provides a quick method of locating nearby waypoints in case of a diversion by ATC. The databases included in the search are Airport, VOR, NDB, INT (Intersection), and User. Emergency Search finds the 20 nearest waypoints in each database. The feature also locates the 20 nearest SUAs (Special Use Airspaces).

The Search Around a Waypoint feature is included in EMG mode, and is very useful in flight planning. It displays the nearest waypoints and SUAs relative to any waypoint in any database.

Runway limits can be used to display only those waypoints with adequate landing facilities. Surface parameters can be Hard, Hard/Soft, or Hard/Soft/Water. Runway length can range from 0 to 9900 feet in 100 foot increments. Lighting can be set to “YES”, or “NO”.

EMG (Emergency) Mode Organization

The figure below illustrates the organization of (EMG) Emergency mode.



Emergency Mode Displays

The following are examples of Emergency Mode displays. The display below shows the second nearest airport to your present position (PPOS). The waypoint identifier is shown in place of the PPos if you are searching around a waypoint other than your present position. The “2” on the top line indicates this is the second closest airport. The second line shows the waypoint identifier, and the database. The bottom line shows the bearing, relative bearing, and distance. The relative bearing arrow shows the approximate direction relative to the current ground track. In the example, the second closest airport to your present position is SLE. The bearing to SLE is 75°, the relative bearing is straight ahead, and the distance is 7.3 nm.

```
NEAR 2 TO PPOS  
SLE AIRPORT  
BRG 075° → 7.3NM
```

Turning the **Large** knob changes the database type. Below is an example of a display showing the closest waypoint in the VOR database.

```
NEAR 1 TO PPOS  
CVO VOR  
BRG 189° ↓ 27.6NM
```

Emergency Mode Displays (continued)

Turning the **Small** knob clockwise displays all the nearest waypoints in the database in sequence. Below is an example of the 5th closest VOR.

```
NEAR 5 TO PPOS  
BTG VOR  
BRG 005° 61NM
```

The display below may be selected with the **Large** knob after entering EMG mode, and is used to display the nearest SUAs (Special Use Airspace areas). The top line shows the name of the SUA. The “2” indicates this is the 2nd closest SUA to your position. The middle line shows the type of SUA. “Inside” means you are inside of the SUA. The bearing and distance to the nearest edge of the airspace is shown on the bottom line. In this example, the second closest SUA to your position is the Portland Oregon ARSA, and the nearest edge of the ARSA is 005°, and 6.2 nm.

```
PORTLAND OR 2  
ARSA INSIDE  
BRG 005° 6.2NM
```

The display below may be selected with the **Large** knob after entering EMG mode, and is used to search around a waypoint. Pressing **ENT** activates the Waypoint Retriever, allowing you to specify which waypoint you want the system to search around.

```
CHOOSE WPT TO  
SEARCH AROUND  
PRESS ENT
```

Emergency Mode Displays (continued)

The display below may be selected with the **Large** knob after entering EMG mode, and is used to set the runway search limits. The surface limit may be set for “Hard”, “Hard/Soft”, or “Hard/Soft/Water”. Lighting requirements (“LIT:”) may be set for “YES” or “NO”. The runway requirements may be changed by pressing **SEL**, using the **Large** and **Small** knobs to edit the display, and pressing **ENT**. Those waypoints that do not meet the requirements are not displayed while using the Emergency Search or Search Around a Waypoint features. All nearest waypoints are displayed during Emergency Search if runway limits are set to zero.

```
RUNWAY LIMITS  
HARD/SOFT/WATER  
FT : 1200 LIT : YES
```

If you attempt to set the lighting requirement when the runway length is set at 0, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds.

```
ZERO RWY LENGTH  
CANNOT EDIT  
LIGHTING
```

If you attempt to set the surface type requirement when the runway length is set at 0, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds.

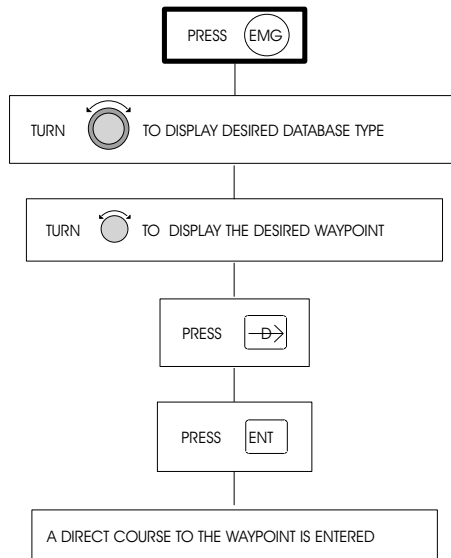
```
ZERO RWY LENGTH  
CANNOT EDIT  
SURFACE TYPE
```

EMG Mode Procedures

Emergency Search/Direct-To Navigation

The following procedure is used to display the nearest waypoints to your position, and navigate directly to any of them.

Flow Chart



Emergency Search/Direct-To Navigation (continued)

Action

1.



Explanation

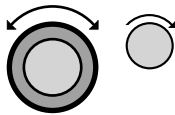
The system is in EMG mode. The nearest airport that meets your runway requirements is displayed. The NMC displays “PPos” for present position, or the waypoint identifier if you are within the arrival radius of a waypoint. (To exit EMG mode, press any other mode button.)

```
NEAR 1 TO PPOS
SLE AIRPORT
BRG 342°↑ 7.3NM
```

If the NMC has not calculated a valid position, the display below, “telling” you the last known position is being used, appears. If you want to continue, press **ENT**.

```
USING LAST KNOWN
POSITION
PRESS ENT
```

2.



Turn the **Large** knob to display the desired database type. Turn the **Small** knob clockwise to display the remaining nearest waypoints for each database type, beginning with the closest, and ending with the most distant. Only waypoints within 600 nm are displayed.

```
NEAR 2 TO PPOS
CVO VOR
BRG 189°← 27.6NM
```

Emergency Search/Direct-To Navigation (continued)

3.



Pressing the **DIRECT-TO** button activates the Waypoint Retriever.

```
VOR    CVO
CORVALLIS
FACIL  OR USA
```

[NAV](#)

4.



Pressing **ENT** enters a direct course to the waypoint.

```
ETE CVO    0:10
      †  0.00
BRG 189° 27.6NM
```

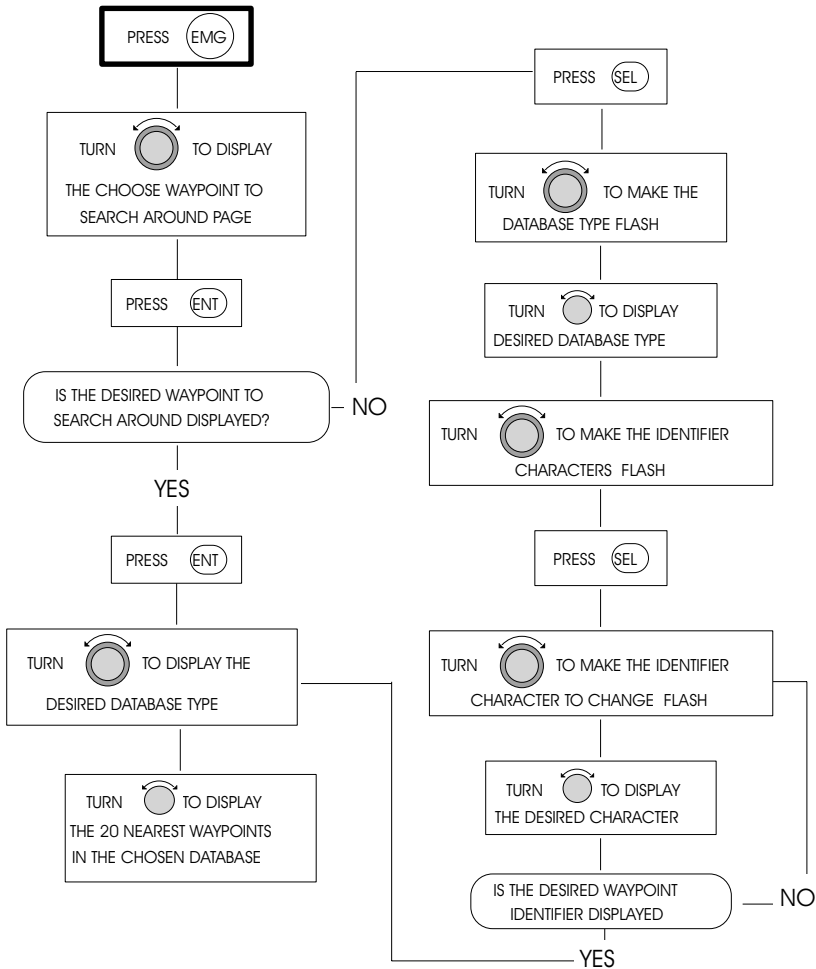
[NAV](#)

Searching Around a Waypoint

The following procedure is used to locate waypoints that are nearby a selected waypoint. **You should understand use of the Waypoint Retriever before executing this procedure.** The Waypoint Retriever is described in Operations, *Retrieving a Waypoint*.

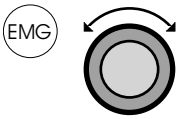
Flow Chart

In this flow chart, waypoints are retrieved by identifier. Waypoints may also be retrieved by City/Facility name.



Searching Around a Waypoint (continued)**Action****Explanation**

1.



Press EMG and then turn the **Large** knob to display the “Choose Waypoint To Search Around” page.

```
CHOOSE WPT TO
SEARCH AROUND
PRESS ENT
```

2.



Pressing **ENT** activates the Waypoint Retriever, and the first character in the waypoint identifier flashes.

```
VOR    CVO
CORVALLIS
FACIL  OR USA
```

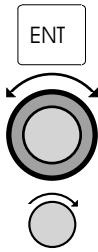
3. Display the desired waypoint.

Use the Waypoint Retriever to display the desired waypoint. The Waypoint Retriever is described in Operations, *Retrieving a Waypoint*.

```
AIRPORT WA61
SPANAWAY
CITY    WA USA
```


Searching Around a Waypoint (continued)

4.



Pressing **ENT** enters the reference waypoint. The NMC displays the nearest airport to the reference waypoint. If necessary, turn the **Large** knob to change the database type. Turn the **Small** knob clockwise to scroll through the waypoints in order, from the nearest to the most distant.

```
NEAR  2 TO WAG1
GR    NDB
BRG 279° 10.6NM
```

Note



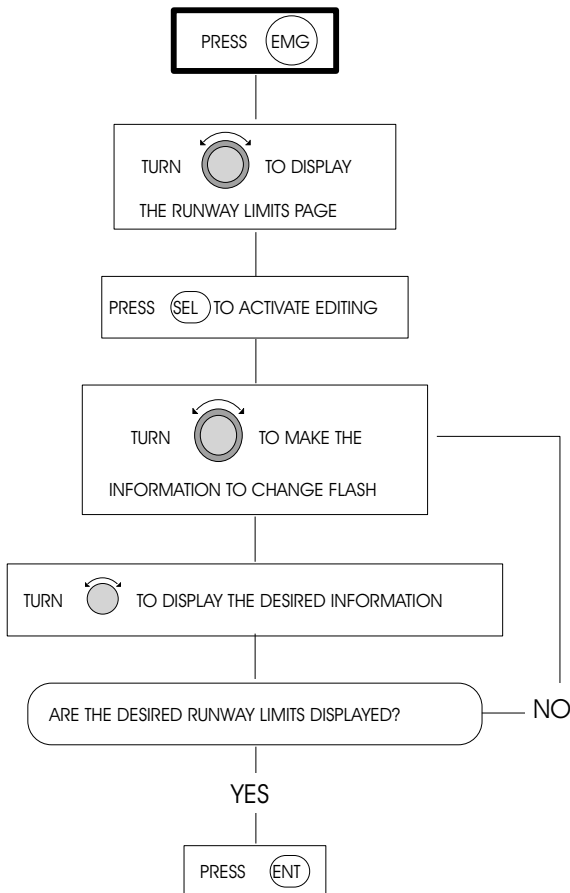
Press **INFO** and then turn the **Small** knob to examine details about the displayed waypoint. Press **INFO** again to return to the previous screen.



Setting Runway Limits

The following procedure is used to choose the runway length, surface and lighting you require. When using Emergency Search or Search Around a Waypoint, the NMC will display only those waypoints that meet or exceed the runway requirements you specify. If a runway length of 0 feet is chosen, you cannot set runway surface or lighting limits.

Flow Chart

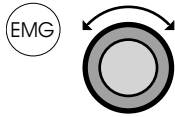


Setting Runway Limits (continued)

Action

Explanation

1.

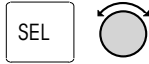


In EMG mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Runway Limits page.

```

RUNWAY LIMITS
HARD/SOFT/WATER
FT:0   LIT:NO
  
```

2.

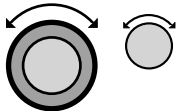


Pressing **SEL** activates editing. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired runway length. Runway length is selected in increments of 100 feet.

```

RUNWAY LIMITS
HARD/SOFT/WATER
FT:2500 LIT:NO
  
```

3.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the surface type or lighting requirement flash. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the setting. Repeat until the desired limits are displayed.

```

RUNWAY LIMITS
HARD/SOFT/WATER
FT:2500 LIT:YES
  
```

Setting Runway Limits (continued)

A runway length must be selected before you can enter surface or lighting requirements. If you attempt to edit the lighting or surface type when a runway length of 0 is selected, one of the displays appears for 2 seconds.

```
ZERO RHY LENGTH  
CANNOT EDIT  
LIGHTING
```

```
ZERO RHY LENGTH  
CANNOT EDIT  
SURFACE TYPE
```

4.

```
ENT
```

Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed runway limits.

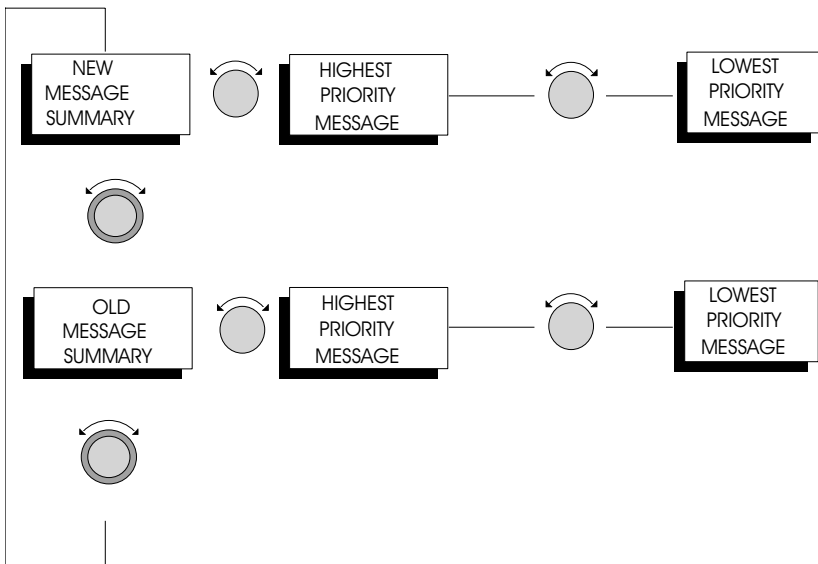
```
RUNWAY LIMITS  
HARD/SOFT  
FT: 2500 LIT: YES
```

MSG (Message) Mode

The NMC (Nav Management Computer) alerts you of conditions that may require attention. When a condition prompting a new message occurs, the MSG annunciator flashes. Once the pilot views the message(s), the MSG annunciator stops flashing, but remains lit as long as the message condition exists. If more message conditions occur, the MSG light will begin to flash again.

Messages are displayed in prioritized order, the most important to the least important.

The figure below illustrates the organization of Message Mode.



Message Displays

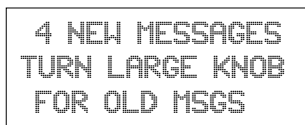
Messages are displayed in a prioritized order. Messages requiring immediate attention are displayed first. Below is a description of possible messages in prioritized order. Examples of typical messages are shown on the following pages. More information on Special Use Airspace messages can be viewed by pressing the **INFO** button.

NOTE

Altitude Assist and Arc Assist messages will not be displayed if the Altitude Assist and Arc Assist functions are disabled during system setup.

New Message Summary

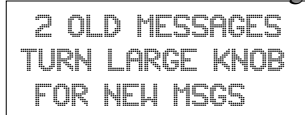
The display below summarizes the number of new messages. It shows the number of new messages to be viewed. In the example, there are 4 new messages to view. If there are no new messages, the display states there are no new messages.

A rectangular display box with a thin black border containing four lines of monospaced text: "4 NEW MESSAGES", "TURN LARGE KNOB", "FOR OLD MSGS".

```
4 NEW MESSAGES
TURN LARGE KNOB
FOR OLD MSGS
```

Old Message Summary




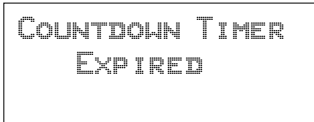
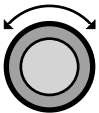

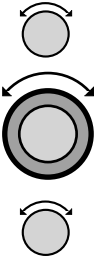
The display below shows the number of old messages (messages that have already been viewed). If there are no old messages, then the display states there are no old messages.

A rectangular display box with a thin black border containing four lines of monospaced text: "2 OLD MESSAGES", "TURN LARGE KNOB", "FOR NEW MSGS".

```
2 OLD MESSAGES
TURN LARGE KNOB
FOR NEW MSGS
```

Viewing Messages

The following procedure is used to view messages. New messages are those not yet viewed; old messages have already been viewed.

- | | <u>Action</u> | <u>Explanation</u> |
|----|---|---|
| 1. |  | Pressing MSG puts the NMC in message mode, and displays the highest priority new message. |
| | |  |
| 2. |  | Turn the Small knob to view the remaining new messages. Once viewed, new messages become old messages, and the MSG light stops flashing, but remains lighted while there are old messages. |
| | |  |
| 3. |  | To view old messages, turn the Large knob to display the Old Message Summary page. |
| | |  |
| 4. |  | Turn the Small knob to scroll through the old messages. If new message conditions occur while in MSG mode, the MSG annunciator begins flashing again. Turn the Large knob to display the New Messages page. Turn the Small knob to display the new messages. |

Empty To Waypoint Message

The display below shows there is no “To” waypoint in the Active flight plan. Since the Active flight plan does not contain any waypoints when the NMC is new, this message will be displayed before the first “To” waypoint is entered.

```
EMPTY TO WPT:  
CANNOT COMPUTE  
NAV INFO
```

Position Sensor Communications Failure Message

When a position sensor stops communicating (after it has established communications) this message is generated. It becomes an old message after viewing.

```
LORAN 1  
COMMUNICAITONS  
FAILURE
```

GPS Sensor Command Failure

When the NMC is receiving data from the GPS sensor, but is not receiving responses to commands sent to the GPS sensor, this message is generated. This problem indicates that the GPS is not receiving NMC transmissions and cannot be used for IFR flight. You should switch to Loran, if available, for IFR flight. It becomes an old message after viewing and remains an old message even if the condition does not persist. Service is required.

```
TX TO GPS FAILED  
GPS NOT FOR IFR  
SERVICE REQUIRED
```

GPS Self-Test Failure

If the GPS has a self-test failure, a message will be displayed indicating the cause of the failure in four hexadecimal digits. Contact the II Morrow service department if this message is displayed. It becomes an old message after viewing. Use another position sensor until service can be performed.

```
GPS SELF TEST  
FAILURE 0200  
FAILURE
```


In Use Position Sensor Lat/Lon Failure Message

When the In Use position sensor cannot compute the Latitude and Longitude, a message is generated for either the Loran or GPS sensor.

```
GPS POSITION  
SENSOR CANNOT  
COMPUTE LAT/LON
```

GPS RAIM Detection Not Available

When RAIM detection is not available for the in-use GPS sensor, a warning is generated. The top line indicates the current flight phase (either Approach, Terminal, or En Route) which directly affects RAIM detection requirements. It becomes an old message after viewing.

```
ENROUTE  
GPS RAIM  
NOT AVAILABLE
```

GPS RAIM Alarm Position Error

When RAIM detection is available for the in-use GPS sensor and it detects a RAIM alarm, a warning is generated and NAV data will be flagged as invalid. The top line indicates the current flight phase (either Approach, Terminal, or En Route), which directly affects RAIM alarm requirements. It becomes an old message after viewing. If the “Abort Approach” message is given, you must abort the approach by pressing the OBS/HOLD button and exercise the missed approach procedure.

```
ABORT APPROACH  
GPS RAIM ALARM  
POSITION ERROR
```

GPS HDOP Accuracy Error

When the HDOP for the in-use GPS sensor exceeds current flight phase HDOP requirements, a warning is generated and NAV data is flagged as invalid. The top line indicates the current flight phase (either Approach, Terminal, or En Route) which directly affects HDOP requirements. It becomes an old message after viewing. If the “Abort Approach” message is given, you must abort the approach by

pressing the **OBS/HOLD** button and exercise the missed approach procedure.

```
TERMINAL  
GPS HDOP  
POSITION ERROR
```

Parallel Track - Approach Conflict

Before an “Enable Approach” alert can occur, parallel track must be “Off.” the following message provides the warning and a fast means to stop parallel track by pressing **ENT**, as indicated. This does not become an old message after viewing.

```
PTK - APPROACH  
CONFLICT. PUSH  
ENT TO STOP PTK
```

Enable Approach

If an approach is loaded in the active plan but not enabled, then at 30 nm to the destination airport and again at 3 nm to the FAF waypoint, the Enable Approach alert will occur. Parallel Track will be disabled when approach operation is enabled. Pressing **ENT** will: enable approach (approach transition operation), turn the APPRCH indicator solid, lock on the GPS sensor, and display a barometric alert.

```
PUSH ENT TO  
ENABLE APPROACH
```

If Loran position inputs are available, the bottom line of the message will also display “and Lock on GPS,” indicating that automatic sensor selection will be disabled when approach in enabled.

Approach Enabled Too Late

When the approach is enabled less than 2 nm inbound to the FAF or after crossing the FAF (inbound to MAP), the Approach Enabled Late alert will occur. This does not become an old message after viewing. You must abort the approach by pressing the **OBS/HOLD** button and exercise the missed approach procedure.



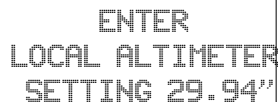
```
ABORT APPROACH
APPROACH ENABLED
<2NM FROM FAF
```

Set Barometer

The Set Barometer alert prompts the user to change the altimeter setting after the approach has been enabled. One of three conditions may exist: altitude inputs to the NMC are not baro-corrected; altitude inputs are baro-corrected; altitude inputs are not available.

Altitude Inputs without Baro-Correction

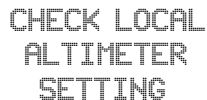
If altitude inputs are not already baro-corrected, the following message prompts the user to enter the local altimeter setting. The **Small** knob is used to modify the highlighted field. The user must press **ENT** to continue normal NMC operation. The default value first displayed is the last entered altimeter reading.



```
ENTER
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.94''
```

Altitude Inputs with Baro-Correction

If the altitude inputs are already baro-corrected, the following screen reminds the user to update the remote device altimeter setting.



```
CHECK LOCAL
ALTIMETER
SETTING
```

No Altitude Inputs

If the NMC is not receiving altitude inputs, the following screen is displayed. You must abort the approach by pressing the OBS/HOLD button and exercise the missed approach procedure.



```
NO ALTITUDE
INPUT
```

No Valid Altitude Input for Approach

When approach is enabled and you are within 3 nm of the FAF or approach is active, the NMC checks for valid altitude input. If the

altitude input is not valid or available, the following warning is given. It becomes an old message after viewing.

```
ABORT APPROACH  
NO VALID  
ALTITUDE INPUT
```

Approach RAIM Unavailable

At 2 nm to the FAF, when approach is enabled and when not holding at the FAF, the NMC checks for predicted approach mode RAIM availability at the FAF and at the MAP waypoints. If RAIM will not be available, the following warning is given.

```
ABORT APPROACH  
RAIM UNAVAILABLE  
AT FF23
```

RAIM Predict Too Late

When approach is enabled and you are less than 3 nm from the FAF, the NMC requests a RAIM prediction for the FAF and the MAP. If those predictions are not completed by the FAF, then the following warning is given. This does not become an old message after viewing. You must abort the approach by pressing the OBS/HOLD button and exercise the missed approach procedure.

```
ABORT APPROACH  
RAIM PREDICT NOT  
COMPLETED BY FAF
```

MCLS Position Sensor Signal Failure

When the in-use MCLS (Multi Chain Loran Sensor) transmits to the NMC that it is unable to receive signals for the current GRI this message is generated. In the example, MCLS 1 is not receiving signals.

```
LORAN 1  
No SIGNAL : CHECK  
GRI, ANTENNA
```

Lat/Lon Position Jump Message

When the In-Use MCLS transmits a Position Jump message to the NMC, or when automatic sensor switching causes a position jump of

greater than 0.5 nm, this message is generated for 20 seconds. It becomes an old message after viewing.

```
LAT/LON  
POSITION JUMP  
OUTPUTS FLAGGED
```

MCLS Non-Volatile RAM (Random Access Memory) Failure Message

When the In-Use MCLS transmits a non-volatile RAM memory loss message, this message is generated. It becomes an old message after viewing. The top line may be either Loran 1 or Loran 2.

```
LORAN 2  
MEMORY FAILURE
```

En Route Loran EPE Warning

During en route mode, when the estimated position error (EPE) for the in-use Loran position sensor is greater than or equal to 2.8 nm, this message is generated. It becomes an old message after viewing. If the EPE cannot be calculated, this message is still generated, and the EPE value is dashed.

```
ENROUTE LORAN  
ACCURACY ERROR  
EPE = 02.9
```

Terminal Loran EPE Warning

During terminal mode (within 30 nm of departure or destination airport), when the estimated position error (EPE) for the in-use Loran position sensor is greater than or equal to 1.7 nm this message is generated. It becomes an old message after viewing. If the EPE cannot be calculated, this message is still generated, and the EPE value is dashed.

```
TERMINAL LORAN  
ACCURACY ERROR  
EPE = 01.7
```

Activating Oceanic Flight Phase

With Primary Oceanic manually armed, the Oceanic flight phase will go active when the aircraft reaches the selected Oceanic Activation Altitude and is outside of terminal airspace. The display shown below will become a new message when the Oceanic flight phase activates and will not become an old message after being read.

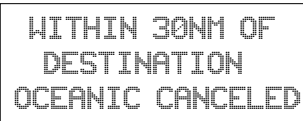


```
PRIMARY OCEANIC  
ACTIVE
```

Canceling Oceanic Flight Phase

The NMC will automatically deactivate the Oceanic/Remote flight phase when the aircraft enters terminal airspace. The Oceanic/Remote function will still be armed.

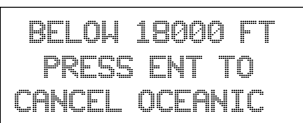
The message below will display when entering terminal airspace. It will not become an old message after being read.



```
WITHIN 30NM OF  
DESTINATION  
OCEANIC CANCELED
```

The message below will display when the aircraft's altitude drops below the Oceanic Activation Altitude. Pressing ENT will cause the NMC to change the flight phase to enroute. Pressing any other button will cause the NMC to continue the Oceanic flight phase. You may then cancel the Oceanic/Remote function as described starting on page 154, or you may:

1. Press the **MSG** key.
2. Rotate the **Large** knob to display the "Old Message" page.
3. Rotate the **Small** knob to display the screen below.
4. Press **ENT**.



```
BELOW 18000 FT  
PRESS ENT TO  
CANCEL OCEANIC
```

Loss of RAIM Detection Function

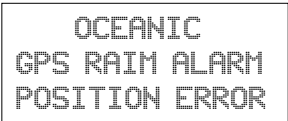
The following status message will be generated if the RAIM status becomes “Unavailable” (meaning there are not enough satellites to perform RAIM calculations) during Oceanic flight phase. This should be a temporary condition. The NMC will continue to provide navigation information while RAIM is unavailable. This message becomes an “Old” message after being acknowledged, and remains until GPS RAIM becomes available.



```
OCEANIC
GPS RAIM
UNAVAILABLE
```

Oceanic RAIM Alarm

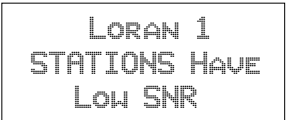
The following message will be generated when a persistent RAIM alarm occurs during the active Oceanic flight phase due to the NMC being unable to exclude an unhealthy satellite or verify that it has excluded the faulty satellite. This message becomes an “Old” message after being acknowledged, and remains until the RAIM alarm condition ends. NAV will be flagged, but the NMC will continue to provide cross-track information.



```
OCEANIC
GPS RAIM ALARM
POSITION ERROR
```

MCLS Station Warnings

The display below shows the Loran signals are unusable. In this example MCLS 1 has a low SNR (Signal-to-Noise Ratio). The bottom line will display “Signal Blink” or “Cycle Error” instead if either of those conditions occur. It becomes an old message after viewing.



```
LORAN 1
STATIONS HAVE
LOW SNR
```

MCLS TD Sensor Failure Warning

The display below shows a TD sensor for an MCLS has failed. In the example below, the MCLS 1 TD sensor has failed. This message clears only after the Loran sensor is repaired. It becomes an old message after viewing.



```
LORAN 1
TD SENSOR 1
FAILURE
```

Altitude Out Of Range Warning

The display below shows that the current altitude is out of range for the in-use altitude sensor. Legal altitude ranges are between -1,500 and 50,000 feet. Check the pressure setting in NAV mode for a possible quick-fix.



```
ALTITUDE
OUT OF RANGE
```

Altitude Encoder Communications Failure Warning

A five second transmission delay from the altitude encoder will cause a message to be generated if the altitude encoder is being used for the current altitude. It does not become an old message after viewing.



```
ALTITUDE ENCODER
COMMUNICATIONS
FAILURE
```

F/ADS Communications Failure Warning

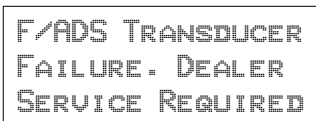
A five second transmission delay from the Fuel/Air Data Sensor causes a communication failure message to be generated. It does not become an old message after viewing.



```
FUEL/AIR DATA
COMMUNICATIONS
FAILURE
```

F/ADS Transducer Failure Warning

The display below shows that the Fuel/Air Data Sensor (F/ADS) has a transducer failure problem, and requires dealer service. This message may not be generated if there is an F/ADS communication failure. All Fuel/Air Data Sensor fields are dashed when this message is on.



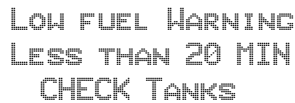
```
F/ADS TRANSDUCER
FAILURE - DEALER
SERVICE REQUIRED
```


NOTE

II Morrow has been informed by the Model 2030 manufacturer (Shadin) that Model 2030 firmware versions xx.xx.62 and earlier do not support the above message. See Page 169 for a method to view the firmware version. Many transducer failures will be indicated by dashed data fields. Contact Shadin for details.

Low Fuel Warning

This message is set when the estimated time before fuel runs out is less than a pre-set number of minutes. The number of minutes remaining when the fuel warning is shown may be edited in System Mode. The example below starts the warning when 20 minutes of fuel remains. *The reserve tank fuel is not taken into account for this message.*



LOW FUEL WARNING
LESS THAN 20 MIN
CHECK TANKS

Arrival at Hold Buffer Altitude Message

The display below shows arrival at the Target Hold Buffer Altitude. In the example below, the Target Hold Altitude is 2,000 feet. The Target Hold Altitude is the altitude you want to descend/ascend to, and is adjusted in NAV mode. The Target Hold Buffer is the distance above/below the Target Hold Altitude at which you want this message to activate. The Target Hold Buffer Altitude is also adjusted in NAV mode.



ARRIVAL AT
2000FT TARGET
HOLD ALTITUDE

Outside of Hold Buffer Message

The display below shows you are above/below the Hold Altitude. This message only appears if you have already ascended/descended into the Target Hold Buffer, and have climbed/descended back out of the buffer. In the example below, the aircraft is 400 ft below the Hold Altitude.



ALTITUDE ALERT
400' BELOW
HOLD ALTITUDE

Start Auto Descent Message

The display below shows you should begin your Auto Descent. This message will be generated 20 seconds prior to auto descent. The descent rate and airspeed are set in NAV mode. In the example below, you should begin your descent to SLE at 1,500 ft/min and 250 knots. This message is cleared after viewing; it does not become an old message after viewing.

```
BEGIN DESCENT  
TO SLE  
1500' /MIN 250KTS
```

Arrival at Auto Descent Target Altitude Message

This message is generated when the aircraft is within 100 feet of the Auto Descent Target Altitude when the feature is turned on. The target altitude is adjusted in NAV mode. In the example below, the Auto Descent Altitude is 2,000 feet. This message is immediately reset after viewing; it does not become an old message after viewing.

```
ARRIVAL AT  
2000FT TARGET  
DESCENT ALTITUDE
```

Arrival at Waypoint Messages

The arrival message is generated when you are within 36 seconds of arrival at the current TO waypoint. It is cleared after viewing. The arrival condition will also go away without viewing the message after crossing the angle bisector.

Not Holding At The TO Waypoint

This form of the Arrival Alert is provided when not holding at the current TO waypoint. In addition to the arrival waypoint identifier, the next leg's desired track is shown, when available; otherwise it is dashed. If wind factors (from the Fuel/Air Data Sensor) and a Next waypoint are available, the desired heading is also shown on line three, otherwise line three is blank.

```
ARRIVAL : SLE  
NEXT DTK 321°  
DESIRED HDG 324°
```

Holding At The TO Waypoint

This form of the Arrival Alert is provided when holding at the current TO waypoint.

```
ARRIVAL : SLE
        HOLDING
```

Next Leg Is DME Arc

This form of the Arrival Alert is provided when the next TO waypoint is the end of a DME arc. Use the DME Arc Assist page in NAV mode. Next Desired Track and Desired Heading are not provided with this alert.

```
ARRIVAL : SLE
NEXT LEG DME ARC
USE ARC ASSIST
```

TO Waypoint Sequence

When a waypoint sequence occurs and you have not viewed the arrival alert, one of the following alerts are provided.

Normal Sequence

The alert is only provided if traveling faster than 5 knots. This reduces the chance of nuisance alerts after power-up. The new waypoint identifier, bearing, and desired track are provided.

```
SEQUENCE ALERT
NEW WPT : SLE
BRG073° DTK069°
```

DME Arc Sequence

This form of the Sequence Alert is provided when the next TO waypoint is the end of a DME arc in a nonprecision approach.

```
SEQUENCE ALERT
NEXT LEG DME ARC
USE ARC ASSIST
```

Auto OBS Crossing Holding Waypoint

When a waypoint on hold is crossed to the FROM side the first time, the NMC will generate the following message. Note: This message is not generated when crossing the MAP. If you press ENT, the OBS Desired Track screen is displayed. If you press NAV, the NAV page is displayed. This message does not become an old message after viewing.

```
PUSH ENT TO SET  
OBS COURSE  
OR NAV TO EXIT
```

User Database Memory Corrupted Message

The display below shows the memory storing one or more User waypoints or comments is corrupted, and memory was deleted. The NMC tests all User waypoints each time the unit is turned on. In the example below, 3 User waypoints or comments were deleted. This message clears after it is viewed.

```
USER DATABASE  
MEMORY LOSS  
3 DELETED
```

Flight Plan Memory Corrupted Message

The display below shows the memory storing one or more flight plans is corrupted, and the affected flight plans were deleted. The NMC tests all flight plans each time the unit is turned on. In the example below, 2 flight plans were deleted. This message clears after it is viewed.

```
FLIGHT PLAN  
MEMORY LOSS  
2 DELETED
```

User Setups Memory Corrupted Message

The display below shows the memory storing user configuration settings such as SUA Buffers or the Flight Timer Trigger Speed is corrupted, and settings have been restored to default (factory) values. This message clears after it is viewed.

```
MEMORY FAILURE  
USER SETUPS HAVE  
BEEN RESET
```

Data card Expired Message

The display below shows the data card expiration date has passed. This message may be set any time a data card is inserted and when the NMC is powered up. The message is cleared after viewing.

```
NORTH AMERICA DB
EXPIRES 03/30/99
VERSION:    1.11
```

Data card Invalid Message

The display below shows the data card is invalid, corrupted, or not properly inserted. This last check is done only once at power-up. It becomes an old message after being viewed.

```
DATABASE INVALID
CHECK DATA CARD
```

Using Manual Magnetic Variation Message

The display below shows manual magnetic variation is in use. If a valid data card is not properly inserted, the magnetic variation must be entered manually during the power-up sequence. Manual magnetic variation may also be entered in System mode. It becomes an old message after being viewed.

```
USING MANUAL
MAG VAR:  13°E
```

Battery Voltage

The NMC checks the battery voltages every 15 seconds.

Low Battery Voltage - NMC


The low battery voltage message is generated when the NMC detects a low battery voltage. User memory for waypoints, flight plans, and configurations is at risk and may be lost. The unit must be serviced within about a month after the first time this warning is seen. It becomes an old message after being viewed.



```
LOW BATTERY  
VOLTAGE : NMC  
NEEDS SERVICE
```

Low Battery Voltage - Keypad

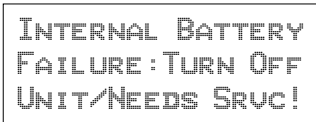
The low battery voltage message is generated when the NMC detects a low battery voltage in the keypad. The unit must be serviced within about a month after the first time this warning is seen. It becomes an old message after being viewed.



```
LOW BATTERY  
VOLTAGE : KEYPAD  
NEEDS SERVICE
```

High Battery Voltage

The high battery voltage message is generated when the NMC detects a high battery voltage. The unit must be returned for service. Continued operation is not recommended. It becomes an old message after being viewed.



```
INTERNAL BATTERY  
FAILURE : TURN OFF  
UNIT/NEEDS SRVC!
```

Countdown Timer Expired Message

The display below shows the active countdown timer has expired. The countdown timer is set in NAV mode. The message is cleared when the user views the message (it does not become an old message) or reactivates the Countdown Timer.



```
COUNTDOWN TIMER  
EXPIRED
```

Flight Plan Transmit Failure

This message is generated when an attempted serial Flight Plan transmission fails to be acknowledged affirmatively by the receiving NMC in under two seconds. It does not become an old message after being viewed.

```
FLIGHT PLAN  
TRANSFER TO NMC  
FAILED
```

RAM Data card Is Full

This message is generated when an installed RAM data card cannot be written to because the RAM data region is full. It does not become an old message after being viewed. Note: This message is only available for the 2101 NMC with a RAM data card installed.

```
RAM DATACARD IS  
FULL : FLIGHTDATA  
STORAGE COMPLETE
```

Displaying SUA (Special Use Airspace) Information

The following procedure is used to display information on a SUA after a SUA message has been generated.

Action

Explanation

1. Display the SUA message.

In MSG mode, display the message alerting you to an SUA.

```

WITHIN 10NM OF
SEATTLE
CLASS B
    
```

- 2.

INFO

Press **INFO** to display information of the SUA. The top line of the display shows the ceiling. The middle line shows the floor, and the bottom line shows the bearing, approximate relative bearing, and the distance to the nearest edge of the SUA. In this example, the ceiling is 10,000 ft, the floor is the surface (ground), the bearing is 154°, the SUA is straight ahead, and the distance is 8.9 nm.

```

CEIL: 10000' MSL
FLOOR: ↑ GROUND
BRG 154° 8.9NM
    
```

- 3.

INFO

Press **INFO** again to exit the Information function.

```

WITHIN 10 NM OF
SEATTLE
CLASS B
    
```


SUA (Special Use Airspace) Nearest Airspace Info

The values for ceiling and floor may be any number of positive feet less than 100,000. Values may also be Unlimited, Ground, Flight Level (FL) followed by a number such as 050, Unknown, or NOTAM (NOtice To Air Men).

```
CEIL : 8000' MSL  
FLOOR : 500' MSL  
BRG 008° ↑ 58.4NM
```

SUA Soon Message

The display below shows you are within 10 minutes of penetrating an SUA (Special Use Airspace), in this example the GABBS CENTRAL MOA. The number of minutes before entering an SUA you want to be alerted may be edited in SYS mode.

```
WITHIN 10 MIN OF  
GABBS CENTRAL  
MOA
```

SUA Close Message

The display below shows you are within 2 nm of an SUA, in this example the SUNDANCE MOA. The number of miles from an SUA you want to be alerted may be edited in SYS mode.

```
WITHIN 2 NM OF  
SUNDANCE  
MOA
```

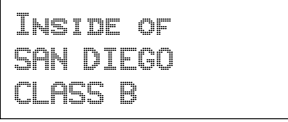
SUA Close Altitude Message

The display below shows you are within 500 ft (either above or below) of an SUA, in this example the NORTON AFB Class C airspace. The number of feet above or below an SUA you want to be alerted may be edited in SYS mode.

```
WITHIN 500' OF  
NORTON AFB  
CLASS C
```

Inside SUA Message

The display below shows you are inside an SUA, in this example the SAN DIEGO Class B airspace.



```
INSIDE OF  
SAN DIEGO  
CLASS B
```

NAV (Navigation) Mode

NAV mode displays Bearing, Track, Distance, Position, and other navigation information. Up to twelve pages (nine pages without the Fuel/Air Data Sensor) of navigation information may be displayed by turning the **Large** knob, or automatically in sequence (Auto Nav Scroll).

NAV mode also allows you to change, modify, and interrupt the Active flight plan. Waypoints can be inserted, modified, and deleted from the Active flight plan without exiting NAV mode by using the From/To/Next page.

Altitude Assist features included in NAV mode allow the NMC to monitor your altitude while en route, and guide you in descent or ascent. The system must include an altitude encoder or a F/ADS (Fuel/Air Data Sensor) to function.

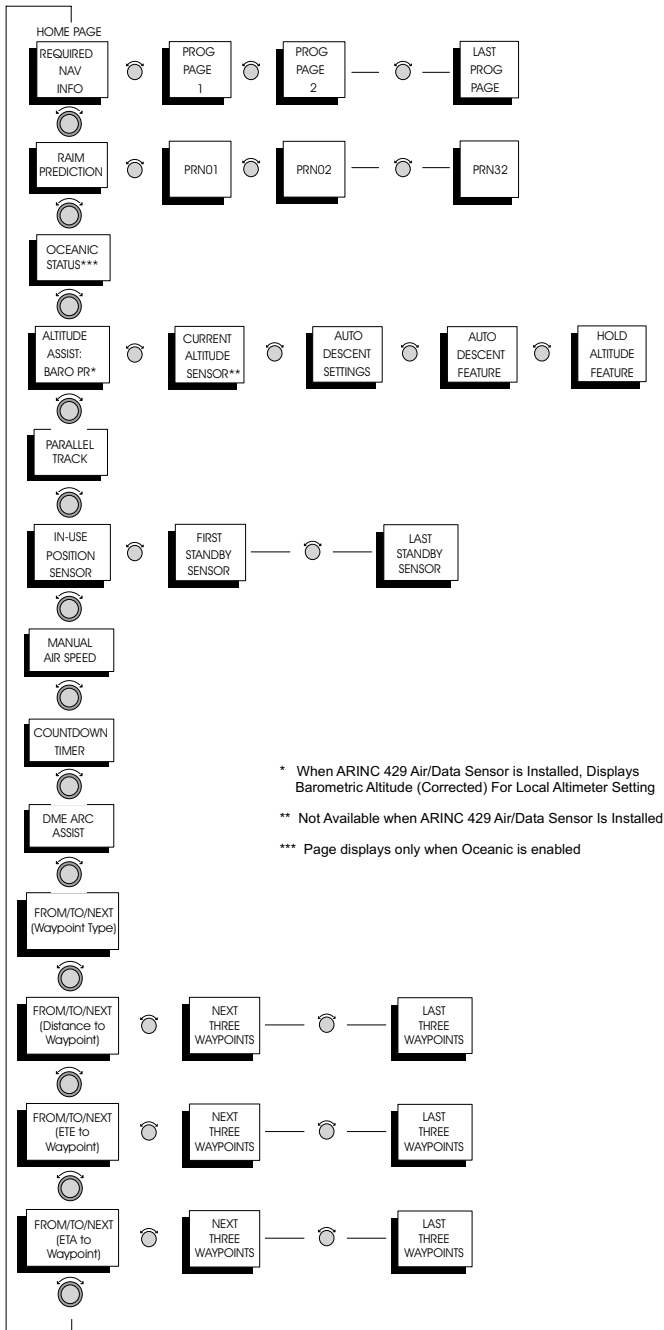
NAV mode also allows you to avoid obstacles or weather by entering a parallel course.

Position sensor selection in NAV mode allows you to select from your available GPS and Loran sensors, while displaying your present position.

A countdown timer is also available and may be set to alert you when it times out.

NAV Mode (continued)

The figure below illustrates the organization of NAV mode.



NAV Displays

Top-Level Nav Displays

In NAV mode, turning the **Large** knob displays the pages depicted below, called “Top-Level” displays. In all modes, the **Large** knob is turned to scroll through Top-Level displays.

The Required Navigation Information Display is depicted below.

In this example, the top line shows the *TO* waypoint (i.e. the waypoint you are flying to) is LAX (Los Angeles International Airport), and the Estimated Time En route (ETE) is 1 hour, 23 minutes. The ETE values will be displayed in minutes and seconds when the Time To Wpt is less than one hour.










The CDI (Course Deviation Indicator), displayed on the middle line, shows the desired course is in this case 0.08 nm to the right of the aircraft. The single dot bar indicates that CDI sensitivity is set to 0.3 nm full scale per side. The bar always extends towards the desired course (steer in the direction of the bar). The manual sensitivity of the CDI may be set to 0.3, 1.0, or 5.0 nm full scale per side. The table appearing at the top of the next page describes the sensitivity choices for the CDI bar. The airplane symbol is used as a To-From indicator; when the plane symbol is shown below, you are flying in the To condition; when the plane symbol is upside-down, you are flying in the From condition (away from the destination).

The bottom line shows the bearing to LAX is 126°, and the distance 167 nm. The diamond in the lower right corner indicates there are sub-pages that may be viewed by turning the **Small** knob. These sub-pages are described later in this section.

Required NAV Information Display

ETE LAX	01:23
0.08NM	←→
BRG 126	167NM

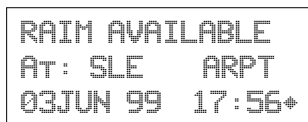
Top-Level Nav Displays (continued)

<p>CDI Sensitivity = 0.3 nm</p>	<p>CDI Sensitivity = 1.0 nm</p>	<p>CDI Sensitivity = 5.0 nm</p>
<p>each  = 0.01 nm</p>	<p>each  = 0.05 nm</p>	<p>each  = 0.24 nm</p>
<p>each  = 0.04 nm</p>	<p>each  = 0.14 nm</p>	<p>each  = 0.71 nm</p>
<p> (full scale) = 0.3 nm</p>	<p> (full scale) = 1.0 nm</p>	<p> (full scale) = 5.00 nm</p>

Turning the **Large** knob one increment clockwise after entering NAV mode displays the screen depicted below. Altitude Assist is only available if the system includes a F/ADS or an altitude encoder. The Altitude Assist Altimeter Setting display is used to enter the current local altimeter setting (sea-level barometric pressure). In this example, the setting is 29.92". For procedural information on entering the current altimeter setting, see Operations, *Setting the Altimeter Altitude*.

RAIM Prediction

Look-ahead RAIM is automatically predicted for the destination waypoint and ETA. If the ETA changes by more than 10 minutes, the NMC automatically re-performs the RAIM prediction. The user can perform a RAIM prediction for any waypoint in the data base for any date and time from 1980 to 2079. Manual RAIM prediction provides a RAIM availability indication using approach operation RAIM alarm requirements (0.3 nm alarm limit) within 15 minutes of the provided date and time. Any predicted RAIM availability failure within the ±15 minute range is considered a RAIM availability failure.



The top line displays the current RAIM availability status. At power-up it will display “RAIM Unknown.” When manual RAIM prediction is being done by the GPS sensor, the display will read “Predicting

RAIM.” Once RAIM prediction is accomplished the top line will display either “RAIM Available” or “RAIM Unavailable.” If manual RAIM prediction is temporarily locked out due to the automatic RAIM prediction required for approach operation, the top line will read “NMC RAIM Busy...” If GPS sensor inputs are not available, the top line will read “RAIM Off: No GPS.”

Editing Manual RAIM Prediction Fields

Press **SEL** to begin RAIM prediction editing. Rotate the Large knob to highlight choices on the second line and then press **ENT** to select a waypoint from the database using the **Large** and **Small** knobs.

Primary Oceanic Status Page

When Primary Oceanic is enabled, status will be displayed on the Oceanic status pages. To display the Oceanic status pages

1. Press the **NAV** button
2. Rotate the **Large** knob to display the oceanic status page. The page will display one of the following screens depending on the current NMC oceanic/remote state.



OCEANIC INACTIVE



OCEANIC ARMED
FOR 18000 FT



OCEANIC ACTIVE

The following status is displayed when there is a RAIM alarm and the Position Uncertainty is unavailable.

```
OCEANIC ACTIVE
ACTUAL POSITION
NOT AVAILABLE
```

The following status is displayed when there is a RAIM alarm and a value for the Position Uncertainty is available.

```
OCEANIC ACTIVE
ACTUAL POSITION
WITHIN 99NM
```

Fault Detection and Exclusion

The NMC will automatically attempt to detect and exclude unhealthy satellite data from calculations during the Oceanic flight phase. When a successful exclusion occurs, the NMC will display the following message (## indicates a satellite PRN number).

```
POSITION UPDATED
FOR FAILED
GPS SV ##E##
```

Altitude Assist Altimeter Setting Display

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92" ↕
```

If an ARINC 429 Air/Data Sensor is installed in the system, the Altitude Assist Altimeter Setting Display shows automatically corrected barometric pressure altitude. No altimeter setting can be made.

Altitude Assist Barometric Altitude Display (ARINC 429 Air/Data Sensor Installations Only)

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
BARO ALT 1000FT
↕
```


Top-Level Nav Displays (continued)

The Parallel Course Offset display is depicted below. In this example, the offset is 1.4 nm to the right, and in Standby status. The offset is not in effect until the “In Use” status is entered. For procedural information, see Operations, Parallel Course Offset. Maximum Parallel Course Offset is 20.0 nm. Parallel Course Offset is disabled during an active approach operation.

Parallel Course Offset Display

```
PARALLEL COURSE  
OFFSET: STANDBY  
RIGHT 1.4NM ◆
```

The Position Display shows the position sensor in use, the Latitude/Longitude position, and the EPE (Estimated Position Error). GPS Sensors do not display an EPE. In this example, the In Use position sensor is Loran 1, and the present Lat/Lon is 45°27.45'N, 122° 51.32' W. Position is displayed in degrees, minutes, and hundredths of a minute. Seconds of Lat/Lon are not used. The EPE is 0.7 nm. If position has not been calculated, the top line of the display reads, “Last Valid Position.”

Position Display

```
LORAN1 IN USE(A)  
45° 27.45N EPE  
122° 51.32W 0.7
```

Countdown Timer Display

The Countdown Timer display is depicted below. In this example, the timer is set for 3 minutes. For procedural information, see Operations, Setting/Starting the Countdown Timer.

```
COUNTDOWN TIMER  
00:03:00
```

Arc Assist Display

The Arc Assist page helps you to navigate arcs, such as DME arcs in non-precision approaches or for user-defined arcs used to conduct aerial searches via increasingly larger circles. Press **ENT** to get navigation information about the displayed waypoint. Press **SEL** to choose a different waypoint. Choose a Left or Right arc with the **Small** knob.

ARC ASSIST	
REF: PDX	ARPT
PRESS ENT OR SEL	

From/To/Next Display

The From/To/Next display is shown below. The top line of the display shows the “FROM” waypoint, i.e. the waypoint you are currently flying from, and the database that stores the waypoint. The middle line shows the “TO” waypoint, i.e. the waypoint you are currently flying to, and the database that stores the waypoint. The bottom line shows the “NEXT” waypoint, i.e. the waypoint you will be flying to after arriving at the “TO” waypoint, and the database that stores the waypoint. After arriving at the To waypoint, the waypoints will sequence, and the “NEXT” waypoint will become the “TO” waypoint. In this example, the “FROM” waypoint is airport (ARPT) SLE; the “TO” waypoint is the PDX VOR, and the “NEXT” waypoint is airport HIO. For procedural information, see NAV Mode Operations, “Using The From/To/Next Page” described on page 102.

FROM SLE	ARPT
TO PDX	VOR
NEXT HIO	ARPT

Navigation Sub-Displays

When the Required Nav Information screen, depicted at the beginning of the preceding section, Top Level Nav Displays, is displayed, turning the **Small** knob displays up to 10 navigation sub-pages (up to seven without an F/ADS). These sub-pages may be customized in SYS mode, i.e. you may select the specific navigation items that you want to appear on each display line. The default displays are depicted below.

ETE AAB 01:23
0.51NM +-
DTK 132 167NM

ETE AAB 01:23
0.51NM +-
TRK 128 TAE 000

ETE AAB 01:23
0.51NM +-
FT01:09 147KTS

ETE AAB 01:23
0.51NM +-
128 TRK132

ETE AAB 01:23
0.51NM +-
14:07 UTC

ETA AAB 15:30
MIN SAFEA 5000'
ENRTSAFEA 9000'

BARO ALT 6000FT
100' ABOVE HOLD
00:11 TO DESCENT

If the Fuel/Air Data Sensor is part of your system, the following default sub-pages are also available.

```
FUEL TO 25USG  
FUEL AT 75 USG  
BURN 14.3USG/HR
```

```
INDAIRSP 153KTS  
TRUAIRSP 147KTS  
GROUNDSP 132KTS
```

```
WIND DIR 131°MAG  
WIND DIR 122°TRU  
WIND SPD 30KTS
```

Eight Character Nav Items

Each navigation item explained below uses half of a display line. All of these items are available when you customize your navigation displays.

The BRG (Bearing) Nav item, depicted below, shows the magnetic bearing to the *To* waypoint from your present location. In this example, the bearing is 253°.

```
BRG 253
```

The distance Nav items, depicted below, show the distance in nautical miles to the *To* waypoint from your present location. In this example, the distance is 116 nautical miles.

```
116NM
```

The TRK (Track) Nav item, depicted below, shows the current magnetic ground track. In this example, the track is 213°.

```
TRK 213
```

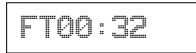
The TAE (Track Angle Error) Nav item, depicted below, shows the difference between DTK and TRK. In this example, TAE is 007°.



The Ground Speed Nav item is depicted below. In this example, the ground speed is 179 knots.



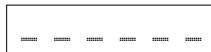
The Elapsed Flight Time Nav item is depicted below. The display shows the elapsed flight time since departure. In this example, the elapsed time is 0 hours, 32 minutes. The flight timer starts when ground speed exceeds a selected value. For information on adjusting the flight timer trigger speed, refer to Operations, *Editing the Flight Timer Trigger Speed*.



The Current To Waypoint Nav item is depicted below.



The Blank Field Nav item is depicted below. Selecting this item will result in a blank field display at the highlighted entry location on the Nav page being programmed.



Sixteen Character Nav Items

The following navigation display items use a total of sixteen characters, an entire display line.

The CDI (Course Deviation Indicator) Nav item is depicted below. The CDI is used in a similar manner to a VOR CDI. The CDI is always included on the middle line of the Required Navigation Information Display. For a detailed explanation of the CDI, see Operations. Top-Level Nav Displays. In this example, the desired course is 0.51 nm to the right.



0.51 †←→

The Track and Bearing Nav item is depicted below. The display indicates the current magnetic track and the magnetic bearing to the *To* waypoint. When the track and bearing are the same, you are flying directly toward the waypoint, and only the track is displayed. In this example, the track is 251° and the bearing is 253°. The bearing is displayed on the left or right, depending on whether the bearing to the waypoint is to the left or right of the current track.



TRK 251 253

The Estimated Time En route (ETE) Nav item is depicted below, and shows the ETE to the *To* waypoint for the current leg. In this example, the ETE to DFW is 2 hours, 43 minutes.



ETE DFW 2:43

The (DTK) Desired Track and Distance Nav item is depicted below, and shows the desired track and distance between the *From* and *To* waypoints. The desired track is the magnetic bearing to the *To* waypoint from the *From* waypoint. In this example the DTK is 235° and the distance between the *From* and *To* waypoints is 97.8 nm. Distance can also be displayed in kilometers.



DTK 235 97.8NM

The Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA) Nav item is depicted below. The MSA is the elevation of the highest obstruction near the aircraft, with 1,000 or 2,000 feet added for safety. Near means that the aircraft is within 5 nm of a 1/4° grid that contains the obstacle.

In non-mountainous terrain, (less than 5,000 feet), 1,000 feet is added. In mountainous terrain (more than 5,000 feet), 2,000 feet is added. In the example, the MSA is 12,000 feet.



MIN SAFEA 12000'

The Minimum En Route Safe Altitude (MESA) Nav item is depicted below. MESA is defined as the highest MSA for every point between the plane's present position and the current "To" waypoint, with a 5 nm buffer around the course.

ENRTSAFEA 14000'

The UTC (Universal Coordinated Time) Nav item is depicted below. For GPS sensors to initialize properly, the UTC time must be correct.

22:45:03 UTC

The Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) Nav item is depicted below. ETA is given in UTC (Universal Time Coordinates) to the current To waypoint. In this example, ETA to Portland International is 14 hours, 23 minutes, and 3 seconds. The Estimated Time of Arrival (Destination Waypoint) Nav item appears the same but displays the destination waypoint identifier and uses the total flight plan distance remaining to calculate ETA.

ETA PDX 14:23

The Barometric Altitude Nav item is displayed below. This item shows pressure altitude corrected for the currently set local altimeter setting. This altitude should match the altitude displayed on your aircraft altimeter, and it should also match the altitude displayed next to the currently in use altitude sensor. In this example, the Barometric Altitude is 1950 feet.

BARO ALT 1950FT

The Time to Descent Nav item is depicted below. This item shows the time before beginning your descent. This item is used only when auto descent monitoring is active. If Auto Descent monitoring is not active, “—:—” is displayed instead of a time. When Auto Descent begins, this item is replaced by the Glide Path Deviation item, or the Feet Over End Altitude item. In this example, the time to descent is 1 hour and 9 minutes.

01:09 To DESCENT

The Glide Path Deviation Nav item is depicted below. This item shows the distance you are above or below your desired glide path. This item is displayed only when Auto descent monitoring is active. If the number of feet above your intended glide path exceeds the number of feet above your intended end altitude, the Feet Over End Altitude item is displayed instead. In this example, the distance above the glide path is 50 feet.

50' ABOVE GL.PTH

The Feet Over End Altitude Nav item is depicted below. This item shows the distance from your current altitude to your intended auto descent altitude. It is only shown in the case when the number of feet above your intended glide path exceeds the number of feet above your intended end altitude. This scenario may occur when the plane overflies the intended auto descent destination point without reaching the desired end altitude.

```
300' OVER ENDFLT
```

The sixteen character Ground Speed Nav item is depicted below. In this example, the ground speed is 147 knots.

```
GROUNDSP 147KTS
```

The Hold Altitude Deviation Nav item is depicted below. This item shows the distance you are above or below the chosen Hold altitude. In this example, the distance above the hold altitude is 350 feet.

```
350' ABOVE HOLD
```

The Fuel To the Current To waypoint item is shown below. This value is calculated using the current burn rates and the distance remaining to the waypoint. The units of fuel may be displayed in USG (United States Gallons), IMG (Imperial Gallons), L (Liters), or LBS (Pounds), Kilos JP4, Kilos Jet Fuel A, or Kilos AvGas depending on the fuel units selected in the System Mode: System Info section. Requires F/ADS.

```
FUEL TO 25 USG
```

The Fuel Remaining At the Current To waypoint Nav item is shown below. This value is calculated using the current burn rates, the amount of fuel in the regular (non-reserve) fuel tanks, and the distance remaining to the waypoint. The units of fuel may be displayed in USG (United States Gallons), IMG (Imperial Gallons), L (Liters), or LBS (Pounds), depending on the fuel units selected in the System Mode: System Info section. Requires F/ADS.

```
FUEL AT 125USG
```

The Fuel Endurance Nav item is depicted next. It displays the predicted endurance time of the fuel, in hours and minutes, based on the current burn rate and the amount of existing fuel in the non-reserve fuel tanks. Requires F/ADS.

```
ENDURANCE 00:34
```

The Miles Per Fuel Unit Nav item is shown below. The units of measurement may be set in System Mode: System Info. Miles per US Gallon, Imperial Gallon, and Liter are displayed in tenths of units. Miles per Pound are displayed in hundredths of units. Requires F/ADS.

NM PER USG 10.2

The Fuel Remaining Nav item is depicted next. It shows the total fuel on board minus the fuel in the reserve tanks. The units of measurement may be set in System Mode: System Info. Requires F/ADS.

REMAIN 112USG

The Fuel Range Nav item, shown below, displays the total distance which the plane can be flown given the current burn rate and the amount of remaining non-reserve fuel. Requires F/ADS.

RANGE 437NM

The Rate of Climb (ROC) Nav item is depicted next. The display below indicates the plane is descending at a rate of 200 feet per minute. Requires F/ADS.

ROC -200FT/MIN

The Desired Heading Nav item is depicted next. This item takes into account wind factors, magnetic variation, and the desired track to calculate the heading necessary to maintain the desired track. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

DESIRED HDC 153°

The Magnetic Heading Nav item is shown next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

MAG HEADING 127°

The Wind Speed Nav item is shown next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

WIND SPD 30KTS

The Magnetic Wind Direction Nav item is shown next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

WIND DIR 131°MAG

The True Wind Direction Nav item is shown next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

WIND DIR 131°TRU

The Density Altitude Nav item is shown next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

DENS ALT 2900FT

The Mach Number Nav item is depicted below. Requires F/ADS.

MACH .800

The Turn Rate Nav item, which displays the current rate of turn of the plane, is shown next. It is in degrees of turn per second left (L) or right (R). Requires F/ADS.

TURN 005°/SEC L

The Outside Air Temperature Nav item, which does not take wind factors into account, is depicted below. In this example, the Outside Air Temperature is -20° centigrade. Requires F/ADS.

OUTAIR° -20°C

The True Air Temperature Nav item, which factors in wind speed relative to a 0 knot ground speed is depicted next. In this example, the True Air Temperature is 10° centigrade. Requires F/ADS.

TRUEAIR° 10°C

The True Air Speed Nav item, which displays the air speed of the plane after correction for altitude and temperature factors, is displayed next. Requires F/ADS or ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor and XYZ heading input.

TRUAIRSP 153KTS

The Indicated Air Speed Nav item, which displays the air speed of the plane without correction for altitude and temperature factors, is displayed next. Requires F/ADS.

INDAIRSP 234KTS

The Burn Rate Nav item, which displays the amount of fuel usage per hour, is shown next. The units of fuel (liters, gallons, pounds, or kilos) may be customized in System Mode. Requires F/ADS.

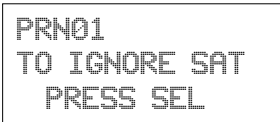
BURN 12.8USG/HR

RAIM Predict Ignore List Sub-Displays

The RAIM Predict Ignore List (RPIL) pages allow the user to specify satellite outages as presented in NOTAMs (Notice to Airmen) or NANUs (Notice Advisory to NAVSTAR Users). This list is only used for RAIM prediction and is not used in navigation. To Access the RPIL pages in NAV mode, rotate the **Large** knob to the RAIM predict page, then rotate the **Small** knob to display the RPIL page for the satellite (listed by PRN number) that you want to exclude from the RAIM prediction. Press the **SEL** button and use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to select and change fields.

NOTE

The NMC will automatically reinclude satellites whose out-of-service time has elapsed.



```
PRN01  
TO IGNORE SAT  
PRESS SEL
```

Clear RAIM Predict Ignore List

The user has the option to clear the RPIL. In the NAV mode, use the **Large** knob to display the main RAIM prediction page. Press **SEL** to display “Select Waypoint?”. Use the **Large** knob to display “Predict RAIM?”. Use the **Small** knob to display “Clr Ignore List?”. Press **ENT** to clear the RPIL. This will make all satellites available for future RAIM predictions.



```
CLR IGNORE LIST?  
AT:SLE ARPT  
23FEB99 17:33
```

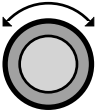

NOTES

NAV Mode Procedures

This section details the procedures used in NAV mode.


Displaying Nav Information

The following procedure is used to display the various Nav pages.

- | | <u>Action</u> | <u>Explanation</u> |
|----|---|---|
| 1. |  | <p>In NAV mode, if necessary, turn the Large knob to display the Required Nav Information page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>ETE ABB 01:25 † 0.00 BRG 251 97NM➤</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">NAV</div> |
| 2. |  | <p>Turn the Small knob to scroll through the Nav Information displays.</p> |

Starting/Stopping Auto Nav Scroll

This feature automatically displays navigation screens sequentially for a specified amount of time, from 1 to 9 seconds per display. To select the amount of time each screen is displayed, refer to Operations, *Setting Auto Nav Scroll Time*.

- | | <u>Action</u> | <u>Explanation</u> |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  | <p>In NAV mode while viewing any information page, press ENT to start Auto Nav Scroll. Rotating either knob or pressing any button stops Auto Nav Scroll.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <pre>ETE ABB 01:15 † 0.00 BRG 286 198.9NM➤</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; width: fit-content; margin: 5px auto;">NAV</div> |

Displaying Present Position

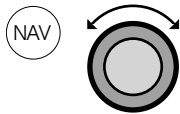
The NMC constantly updates your present position. Loran GRIs, triads, and GPS satellites are automatically chosen by the NMC. If desired, you may enter the GRI/Triad manually in SYS mode.

The following procedure is used to display the position calculated by each sensor in the system.

Action

Explanation

1.



In NAV mode turn the **Large** knob to display the Position Summary page. This page displays the position information from the position sensor in use.

```
LORAN1  IN USE
 45°27.45N  EPE
122°51.32W  1.7♦
```

NAV

2.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the position provided by each sensor. Only one sensor is In Use, and the rest are on Standby.

```
LORAN2  STANDBY
 45°27.46N  EPE
122°51.31W  2.9
```

NAV

If a position sensor is no longer sending valid information, the Last Valid Position display, depicted below, is displayed, and this position is used for navigation functions.

```
LAST VALID POS:
 44°54.58N
123°00.08  ♦
```

NAV

If a position sensor has not communicated with the NMC since power-up, the Not Communicating display, depicted below, appears.

```
LORAN2
  NOT
COMMUNICATING+
```

NAV

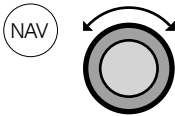
Selecting a Position Sensor

The following procedure is used to choose the In Use position sensor.

Action

Explanation

1.



In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Position Summary page. This page displays the position (latitude/longitude) determined by the In Use sensor.

```
LORAN1 IN USE (A)
 45°27.45N EPE
122°51.32W 1.7
```

NAV

2.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the position sensor you want to use.

```
LORAN2 STANDBY
 45°27.46N EPE
122°51.31W 2.9
```

NAV

3.



Pressing **SEL** activates editing. “Standby” automatically changes to “Use?”.



4.



Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed sensor as the In Use sensor, and the NMC will use data from this sensor to calculate position. Pressing **SEL** instead exits editing without changing the In Use sensor.

Manually selecting a position sensor will cancel Automatic Position Sensor Selection.

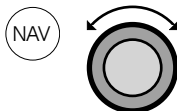
Automatic and Manual Position Sensor Selection

Position Sensor Selection allows you to choose which of the position sensors installed on the Navnet network to use for navigation. Automatic Position Sensor Selection allows the NMC to automatically choose which position sensor is being used for navigation. Manual Position Sensor Selection disables the automatic option and allows you to choose your position sensor. While using Manual Position Sensor Selection, the NMC will not choose a different position sensor for navigation.

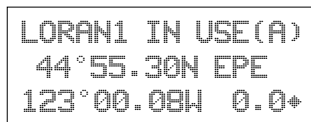
Action



Explanation

1.





In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the In Use Position Sensor page. The (A) on the top right of the display indicates that Automatic Position Sensor Selection is in use.



2.   Turn the **Small** knob to display the Automatic/Manual page, and press **SEL** to activate editing.

```
AUTOMATIC (A)
POSITION SENSOR
SELECTION
```

NAV

3.   Turn the **Small** knob to change the option and press **ENT** to save the change.


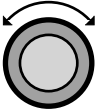
```
MANUAL (M)
POSITION SENSOR
SELECTION
```

NAV

While Automatic Position Sensor Selection can be started or canceled using the method described above, it can also be canceled by manually selecting a different position sensor, as follows:



Action

Explanation

1.   In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the In Use Position Sensor page. The (A) on the top right of the display indicates that Automatic Position Sensor Selection is in use.

```
LORAN1 IN USE(A)
44°55.30N EPE
123°00.08W 0.0
```

NAV

2.   Turn the **Small** knob to display the Position Sensor that you wish to select. Press **SEL** to activate editing.

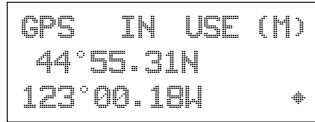
```
GPS USE?
44°55.31N
123°00.18W
```

NAV

3.



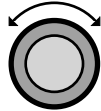
Pressing **ENT** activates the position sensor and cancels Automatic Position Sensor Selection.



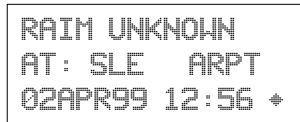
Editing Manual RAIM Prediction Fields

The Apollo NMC allows the user to manually check predicted RAIM availability for any waypoint, date, and time contained by the data base.

1.



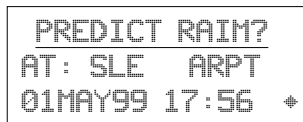
In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to the RAIM Prediction page.



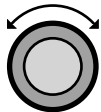
2.



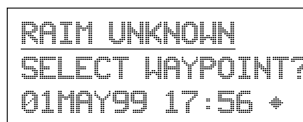
Press **SEL** to begin RAIM prediction editing.

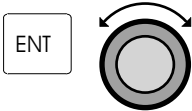



3.




Turn the **Large** knob to highlight the field that you want to change (waypoint, month, day, year, or time).




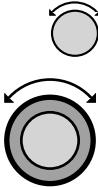
4.  Press **ENT** to access the database and use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to select a waypoint.
5.  Press **ENT** twice to begin the prediction process or use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to change the date and time. The prediction process will take approximately 20 seconds.
- ```

RAIM AVAILABLE
AT: SEA ARPT
012APR99 14:56 ♦

```
6.  To reselect the destination waypoint, rotate the **Small** knob to USE DEST & ETA ? Press **ENT** to select destination, compute ETA and start RAIM prediction.

### Editing RAIM Predict Ignore List

The Apollo NMC allows the user to specify satellite outages for RAIM predictions using information presented in NOTAMs or NANUs.

1.  From the RAIM prediction page rotate the **Small** knob to the desired satellite page. Press the **SEL** button
2.  The screen below will initially display with the hours field flashing. Rotate the **Small** knob to select the outage hours (from 0 to 99). Rotate the **Large** knob to select other fields to modify.

```

PRN01 OUT: 00HRS
FR: 01FEB99 03:04
TO 01FEB97 03:04

```

3.



To indefinitely remove a satellite from service, including over power ups, rotate the **Small** knob until REMOVE is displayed in the hours location and press **ENT**. The screen below will display and the satellite will be ignored starting from the FR date shown on the screen.

```
PRN01
FR: 01FEB99 03:04
OUT-OF-SERVICE
```

### Clear RAIM Predict Ignore List

The user has the option to clear the RPIL available from the main RAIM prediction page.

1.



Press **SEL** to display “Select Waypoint?”. Use the Large knob to display “Predict RAIM?” on the top line

```
PREDICT RAIM?
AT: SLE ARPT
01MAY99 12:56 ◆
```

2.



Use the **Small** knob to display “Clr Ignore List?”. Press **ENT** to clear the RPIL. This will make all satellites available for future RAIM predictions.

```
CLR IGNORE LIST?
AT: SLE ARPT
23FEB99 17:33
```

## Altitude Sensor Selection

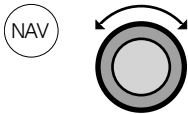
Altitude Assist requires the system include an altitude encoder or Fuel/Air Data Sensor (F/ADS). This procedure is used to select which of these sensors is used for altitude data. In this example, the current sensor is an altitude encoder, and is changed to an F/ADS. The same procedure is used to change back.



*If an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed in the system, this sensor is automatically selected as the current sensor for altitude data. No other altitude sensor may be selected.*

### Action

1.



### Explanation

In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Altitude Assist page.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92"*
```

NAV

If an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed in the system, the Altitude Assist page appears as shown below.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
BARO ALT 1000FT
```

2.

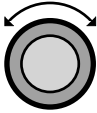


Turn the **Small** knob to display the Current Sensor page, and press **SEL** to activate editing. The "\*" is next to the activated sensor.

```
CURRENT SENSOR
*ENCODER 1020FT
F/ADS 1021FT
```

NAV

3.



Turn the **Large** knob to choose the desired sensor.

```
CURRENT SENSOR
ENCODER 1020FT
*F/ADS 1021FT
```

NAV

4.



Press **ENT** to enter the sensor choice.

```
CURRENT SENSOR
ENCODER 1020FT
*F/ADS 1021FT
```

NAV

## Setting the Altimeter (Barometric Pressure)

Each time the system is powered up, the barometric pressure is automatically set to standard pressure, 29.92" (or 1013 mb). This procedure is used to enter the current altimeter setting (barometric pressure).


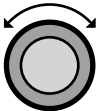
### Note



*These pages are not available if an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed in the system.*

### Action

### Explanation

1.  

In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Altitude Assist page.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92 ◆
```



NAV

2. 

**Pressing** SEL activates editing, and the current barometric pressure setting flashes.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92 ◆
```

NAV

3.  

Turn the **Small** knob to adjust the barometric pressure. Press **ENT** to enter the setting.

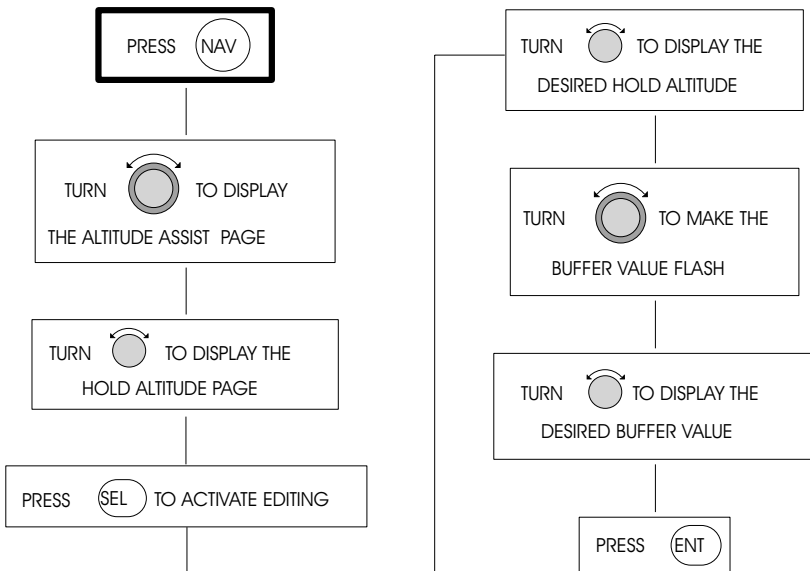
```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 30.04 ◆
```

NAV


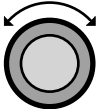
### Setting/Editing Hold and Buffer Altitudes

Altitude Assist features require that the system include an altitude input device. The NMC alerts you when you've ascended/descended into the Hold Buffer, or have strayed outside of the buffer. The Buffer Altitude is the altitude above and below your Hold altitude at which you want to be alerted with a message. This procedure is used to set the Hold Altitude and the Buffer Altitude.

#### Flow Chart

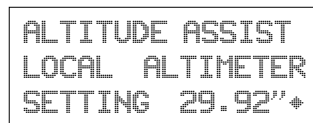


#### Action

- 


#### Explanation

In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Altitude Assist page. (If an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed, this page shows barometric altitude, not the local altimeter setting.)



NAV



2.

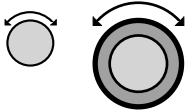


Turn the **Small** knob to display the Hold Altitude page. Pressing **SEL** activates editing.

```
HOLD ALT 15000FT
BUFFER 200FT
ENT TO HOLD ALT
```

NAV

3.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired Hold Altitude. The altitude is chosen in increments of 50 ft. Turn the **Large** knob to make the Buffer value flash.

```
HOLD ALT 13600FT
BUFFER 1000FT
```

NAV

5.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired Buffer Altitude value. The Buffer altitude is chosen in increments of 10 ft. Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed values.

```
HOLD ALT 13600FT
BUFFER 350FT
ENT TO HOLD ALT
```

NAV

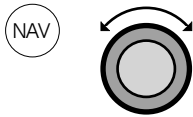
## Starting/Stopping Altitude Hold

Altitude Assist features require the system include a F/ADS or an altitude encoder sensor. The following procedure is used to start or stop the Altitude Hold feature. When active, Altitude Hold alerts you with a message when you have ascended/descended into the buffer, or when you stray outside the buffer. The Buffer Altitude is the altitude above and below your Hold altitude at which you want to be alerted with a message.

Action

Explanation

1.



In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Altitude Assist page.

```
ALTITUDE ASSIST
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92"
```

NAV

2.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the Hold Altitude page.

```
HOLD ALT 15000FT
BUFFER 1000FT
ENT TO HOLD ALT
```

NAV

3.



Pressing **ENT** activates Altitude Hold.  
Pressing **ENT** again deactivates the feature.



```
HOLD ALT 15000FT
BUFFER 1000FT
ENT TO CANCEL
```

NAV

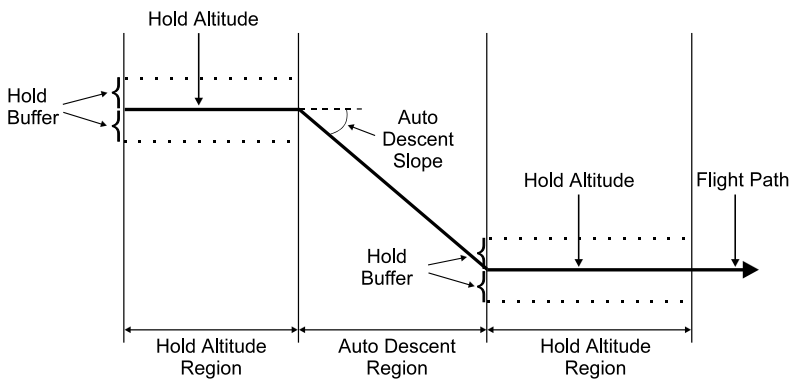
## Setting/Editing Auto Descent Values

Altitude Assist features requires the system to include either a F/ADS or an altitude encoder sensor.

The Auto Descent feature allows you to input a desired End Altitude, an Offset Distance from a desired Auto Descent Waypoint from the Active flight plan, a desired Feet per Minute Descent rate, and an expected Ground speed. It then automatically calculates the distance remaining in your Active flight plan to the desired Auto Descent Waypoint and, based on the calculated glide path angle, your present altitude, and the altitude you are descending to, alerts you with a message when you should begin and end your descent. A Nav item field displays information indicating how much time remains before you should begin Auto Descent, and once Auto Descent begins, whether you are above or below your intended Glide Path. Glide Path data may also be output to an optional Vertical Deviation Indicator.

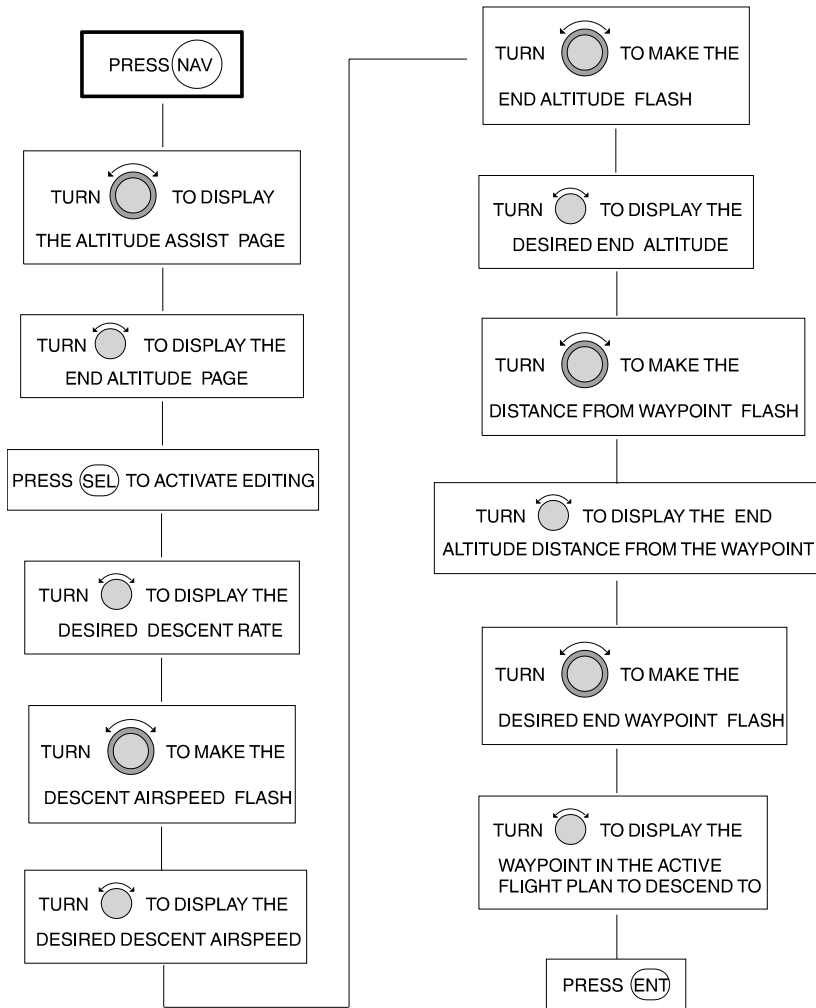
Each time you begin to edit the Auto Descent values, the End Altitude is automatically reset to 1,000 feet over the altitude of the desired Auto Descent Waypoint, if the waypoint is an airport. Otherwise, the End Altitude automatically resets to 1,000 feet. In addition, the default Auto Descent Waypoint is automatically updated, as long as Auto Descent is OFF, to the current To waypoint each time a waypoint sequence occurs. These features will assist you in making Auto Descent quick and easy to edit and use.

The following procedure is used to set/edit the Auto Descent values.



## Setting/Editing Auto Descent Values (continued)

### Flow Chart



Set up your Auto-Descent by selecting:

Distance from destination waypoint (0 - 99 nm)  
or Offset Distance

Ending altitude (-1,500 - 50,000' in 50' steps)

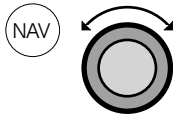
Descent rate (100 - 5,000'/min in 10'/min steps)

Estimated ground speed (50 - 600 kts)

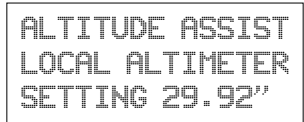
**Action**

**Explanation**

1.



In NAV Mode turn the **Large** knob to display the Altitude Assist page. (If an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed and provides corrected baro-altitude, this page shows barometric altitude, not the local altimeter setting.)

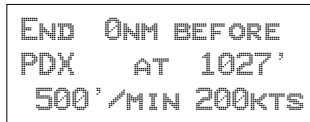


NAV

2.

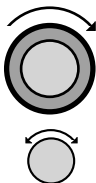


While viewing either the Auto-Descent or End Alt page in the Altitude Assist function, press **SEL**. The Offset Distance value will flash. Turn the **SMALL** knob to change the Descent Offset Distance value.



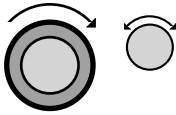
NAV

3.



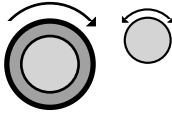
Turn the **LARGE** knob to the destination waypoint field. Turn the **SMALL** knob (cw or ccw) to change the field. You can choose from the remaining waypoints in your flight plan.

4.



Turn the **LARGE** knob to the Ending Altitude value. Turn the **SMALL** knob to change the value. The default value is 1000 ft above the airport elevation.

5.



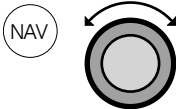

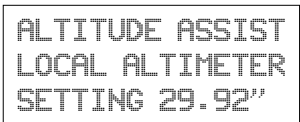

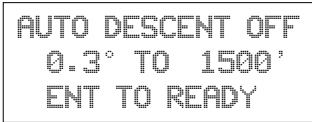
ENT

Turn the **SMALL** knob to the Auto Descent page, if necessary. Your recommended glide slope and ending altitude are shown. Press **ENTER** to activate (ready) Auto Descent. Press **ENTER** again to cancel it.

**Notes**

## Starting/Stopping Auto Descent

Altitude Assist features require the system to include an altitude input device. The following procedure is used to start or stop Auto Descent. Auto Descent calculates the distance remaining in your Active flight plan, and based on the glide path angle, the altitude you are descending to, and your present altitude, alerts you with a message when you should begin and end your descent. For a complete discussion on Auto Descent, refer to Setting/Editing Auto Descent Values.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                          | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.    | In NAV mode turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Altitude Assist page. (If an ARINC 429 Air/Data sensor is installed, this page shows barometric altitude, not the local altimeter setting.)                                                                                                                                                          |
| 2.    |  Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the Auto Descent page. Based on the descent rate defined in the preceding procedure, a descent angle in degrees is calculated and displayed on the middle line. |
| 3.  |  Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates Auto Descent. Pressing <b>ENT</b> a second time deactivates the feature.                                                                                              |
|                                                                                        | AUTO DESCENT OFF<br>0.3° TO 1500'<br>ENT TO CANCEL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

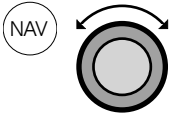



## Parallel Course Offset

The NMC allows you to fly a course parallel to the course you've defined by entering a parallel course offset. This may be useful in avoiding weather or other obstacles.

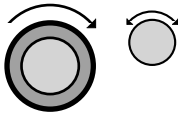
### Activating/Deactivating/Editing Parallel Course Offset

The following procedure is used to activate, deactivate, or edit a parallel course.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. </p>   | <p>In NAV mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Parallel Course Offset page. The current status is displayed on the right side of the middle line. There are two status options available: In Use and Standby. In this example, the status is Standby, meaning the feature is not in use.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       PARALLEL COURSE<br/>       OFFSET: STANDBY<br/>       LEFT 0.0NM     </div> <p><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">NAV</span></p> |
| <p>2. </p> | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing, and a prompt for the alternate status option, in this example "Use?", flashes. The current offset direction and value is displayed on the bottom line. If the desired offset were already displayed, pressing <b>ENT</b> at this point would enter the new status.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       PARALLEL COURSE<br/>       OFFSET: <u>USE?</u><br/>       LEFT 0.0NM     </div>                                                          |

### Activating/Deactivating/Editing Parallel Course Offset (continued)

3.

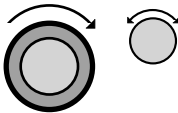


If necessary, turn the **Large** knob to make the direction setting flash, and turn the **Small** knob to change the direction.

```
PARALLEL COURSE
OFFSET: STANDBY
 RIGHT 2.2NM
```

NAV

4.

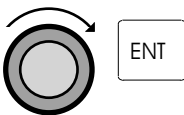


Turn the **Large** knob to make the offset value flash. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the amount of the offset. The offset is chosen in tenths of a mile, up to a maximum of 20.0 nm.

```
PARALLEL COURSE
OFFSET: STANDBY
 RIGHT 2.2NM
```

NAV

5.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the status flash, and press **ENT** to enter the status. Anytime you want to change the status without adjusting the direction or amount of the offset, simply press **SEL** then **ENT**.

SEL

ENT

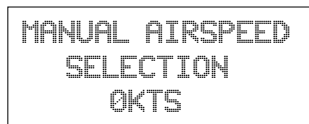
```
PARALLEL COURSE
OFFSET: IN USE
 RIGHT 2.2NM
```

NAV

## Manual Air Speed

The 2101 can be setup to allow you to manually enter an air speed. The Manual Airspeed selected will be used as the True Air Speed. By entering an air speed, may then view Wind Speed, Magnetic Wind Direction, and True Wind Direction when these Nav items are selected. See the section on Programmable Nav pages on page and page for details on Wind information. This function is only available when a F/ADC or the ARINC 561 board are NOT installed.

1. In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Manual Air Speed page.



NAV

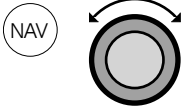

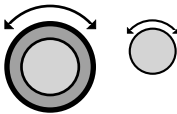
2. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the desired values.

## Countdown Timer

The countdown timer is set in hours, minutes, and seconds. When the timer reaches 00:00:00 a message is generated, and the MSG light flashes. After viewing the message, the message clears. A maximum time of 99:59:59 may be entered. Once the timer is started, you may change modes or displays without disturbing the Countdown Timer.

### Setting/Starting the Countdown Timer

The following procedure is used to set and start the countdown timer.

- |    | <u>Action</u>                                                                       | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. |    | <p>In NAV mode turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Countdown Timer page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">COUNTDOWN TIMER<br/>00:03:00</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">NAV</p>                                                          |
| 2. |    | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing, and the minutes value flashes. Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to adjust the minutes value.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">COUNTDOWN TIMER<br/>00:0<u>4</u>:00</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">NAV</p> |
| 3. |  | <p>Use the <b>Large</b> and <b>Small</b> knobs to edit other values on the display.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">COUNTDOWN TIMER<br/>00:04:<u>30</u></p> </div> <p style="text-align: center; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">NAV</p>                                              |

4.

ENT

SEL

Press **ENT** to start the timer.Note: pressing **SEL** while the timer is running resets the timer and activates editing.

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| <p>COUNTDOWN TIMER<br/>00:04:27</p> |
|-------------------------------------|

NAV

### DME Arc Assist

See the DME-ARCs (Arc Assist) section in the Approach portion of this manual. See page 249.

### Waypoint Distance Page

This page shows the cumulative distance from your current position to each waypoint in the active flight plan starting with the active leg. Turn the **Small** knob to view the next set of waypoints in your active flight plan. The waypoint type is shown to the left of the identifier. The allowable waypoint types are: Airport (a), Intersection (i), NDB (n), and VOR (v). The waypoint type symbol will not be shown if one of the following occurs: the waypoint identifier is unknown, it is an approach waypoint that is not one of the four used types, it is a User waypoint, the waypoint is not recognized by the current data card's database, or the data card has been removed.

|      |         |
|------|---------|
| ASLE | -----NM |
| APDX | 43NM    |
| ASEA | 154NM   |

NAV

### Waypoint ETE Page

This page displays the cumulative time in hours and minutes from your current position to each waypoint in the active flight plan, starting with the active leg. The ETE values will be displayed in minutes and seconds when the Time To Wpt is less than one hour. Turn the **Small** knob to view the next page of waypoints. The time will not be shown for the same reasons as in the Waypoint Distance page.

|      |          |
|------|----------|
| ASLE | ETE--:-- |
| APDX | ETE00:25 |
| ASEA | ETE01:32 |

NAV

## From-To-Next Waypoint ETA Page

This page displays the ETA for each waypoint in your active flight plan from your current position, starting with the active leg. Turn the **Small** knob to view the next page of waypoints. The time will not be shown for the same reasons as in the Waypoint Distance page, if the ground speed is zero, or if 3-D positioning is lost.

|      |          |
|------|----------|
| ASLE | ETA--:-- |
| APDX | ETA12:15 |
| ASEA | ETA13:32 |

NAV

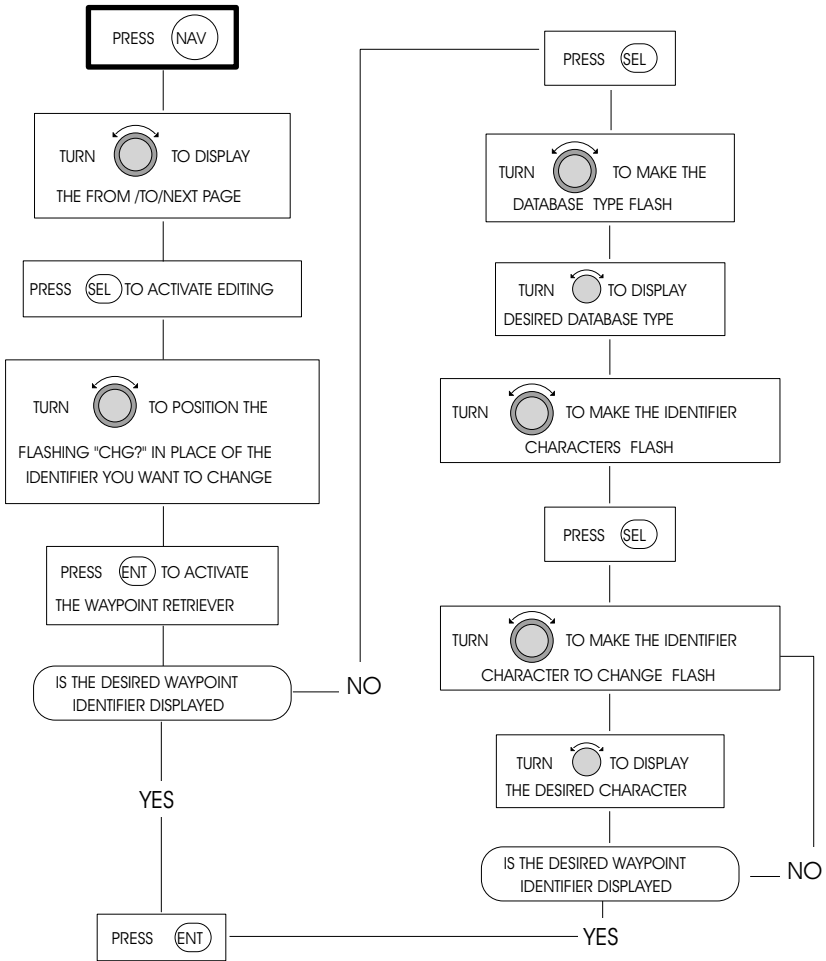
## Using the From/To/Next Nav Page

The From/To/Next Nav page shows the *From* waypoint, the waypoint you are currently flying from; the *To* waypoint, the waypoint you are currently flying to; and the *Next* waypoint, the waypoint you will be flying to after arriving at the current *To* waypoint. These waypoints are contained in the Active flight plan. Using the From/To/Next page, these waypoints may be changed or deleted, or a new waypoint may be inserted. These modifications are made to the Active flight plan, and do *not* affect the stored flight plan that was activated. Also, the Active flight plan may be put on “Hold”, which stops the flight plan waypoints from sequencing. **You should understand the use of the Waypoint Retriever before executing procedures in this section. The waypoint Retriever is described in DB Mode Procedures, “Retrieving a Waypoint” on page 115.**

## Inserting and Editing a From/To/Next Waypoint

The following procedure is used to insert or edit one of the waypoints on the From/To/Next page with another waypoint. When a waypoint is inserted, the remaining waypoints automatically sequence, i.e. move down.

**Flow Chart**

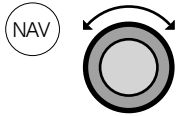


## Inserting and Editing a From/To/Next Waypoint (cont'd)

### Action

### Explanation

1.



In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the From/To/Next page. The current *From*, *To*, and *Next* identifiers are displayed. Blank lines appear in spaces where there are no waypoints.

|      |     |      |
|------|-----|------|
| FROM | EUG | ARPT |
| TO   | CVO | VOR  |
| NEXT | SLE | ARPT |

NAV

2.

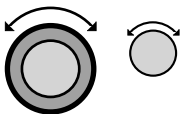


Press **SEL** to activate editing. “CHG?” (Change) appears in place of the *Next* waypoint. If no *Next* waypoint is displayed, “INS?” (Insert) appears instead. “CHG?” is used to replace the waypoint, and “INS?” is used to add a waypoint. “DEL?” (Delete) will remove the waypoint.

|      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| FROM | EUG  | ARPT |
| TO   | CVO  | VOR  |
| NEXT | CHG? | ARPT |

NAV

3.




Turn the **Large** knob to choose the waypoint to change, or the location where a new waypoint is to be inserted. To insert a waypoint, turn the **Small** knob to display “INS?” “HOLD” may be chosen to replace “TO”. “HOLD” is used to place the Active flight plan on hold, and prevent waypoint sequencing. You may also press the OBS/HLD button when installed.

|      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| FROM | EUG  | ARPT |
| TO   | INS? | VOR  |
| NEXT | SLE  | ARPT |

NAV



## Inserting and Editing a From/To/Next Waypoint (cont'd)

4.  Pressing **ENT** activates the Waypoint Retriever.

```
VOR CVO
CORVALLIS
FACIL OR USA
```

**NAV**

5. Display the desired waypoint. Use the Waypoint Retriever to display the desired waypoint. The Waypoint Retriever is described in Operations, *Retrieving a Waypoint*.

```
AIRPORT S12
ALBANY
CITY OR USA
```

**NAV**

6.  Press **ENT** to enter the displayed waypoint into the Active flight plan.

```
FROM EUG ARPT
TO S12 VOR
NEXT CVO ARPT
```

**NAV**

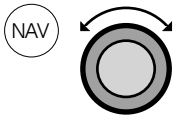
### Hold/Continue the From/To/Next Sequencing

The following procedure is used to change the flight plan status to HOLD, or to resume flight plan sequencing after holding. HOLD prevents the Active flight plan waypoints from sequencing. While the flight plan status is HOLD, the NMC continues to show the bearing to the TO waypoint even after you have passed the waypoint. If you have passed the TO waypoint, the symbolic airplane on the CDI indicator is displayed inverted.

**Action**

**Explanation**

1.



In NAV mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the From/To/Next page. The current *From*, *To*, and *Next* identifiers are displayed. Blank lines appear in spaces where there are no waypoints.

|      |     |      |
|------|-----|------|
| FROM | EUG | ARPT |
| TO   | CVO | VOR  |
| NEXT | SLE | ARPT |

NAV

2.

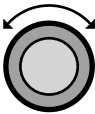


Pressing **SEL** activates editing. “CHG?” (Change) appears in place of the *Next* waypoint. If no Next waypoint is displayed, “INS?” (Insert) appears.

|      |      |      |
|------|------|------|
| FROM | EUG  | ARPT |
| TO   | CVO  | VOR  |
| NEXT | CHG? | ARPT |

NAV

3.



Turn the **Large** knob to position “HOLD?” in place of “TO”. If “HOLD” is the current status, “TO?” appears instead. Pressing **ENT** enters the status in the Active flight plan.

|       |     |      |
|-------|-----|------|
| FROM  | EUG | ARPT |
| HOLD? | CVO | VOR  |
| NEXT  | SLE | ARPT |

NAV

## DB (Database) Mode

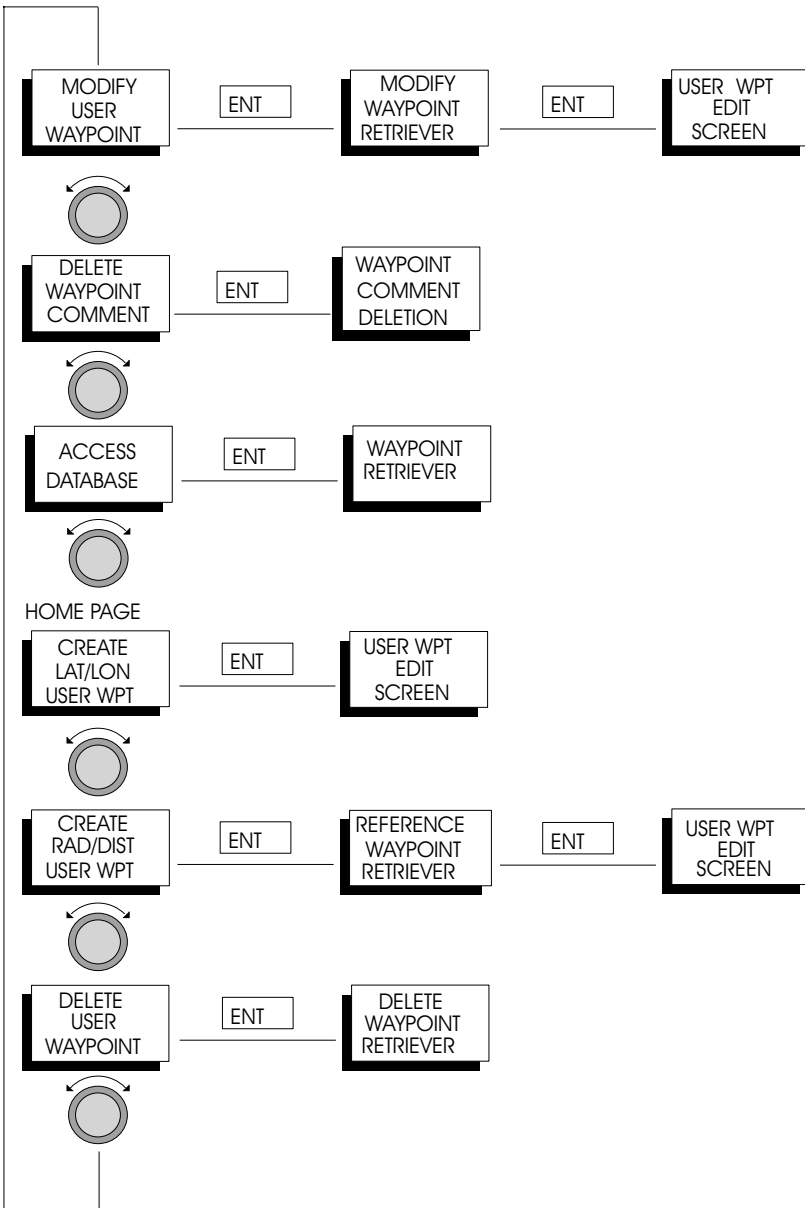
Database mode is used to access, modify, create, and delete waypoints and waypoint information. Airport, VOR, NDB, and Intersection waypoints are stored on the data card, and accessed in DB mode. These waypoints, and information on these waypoints, may not be changed or deleted. User waypoints and information on User waypoints are stored in the Navigation Management Computer (NMC), not on the data card.

**The Waypoint Retriever is used to access waypoints. Use of the Waypoint Retriever is consistent in all six modes, and is used whenever you need to display a waypoint.**

User waypoints are created in DB mode by directly entering the Latitude/Longitude, creating the waypoint at the location of the waypoint, or by entering the radial and distance from another waypoint.

### Database Mode (continued)

The figure below illustrates the organization of Database mode.



# Databases

Database mode (DB mode) is used to access and display waypoints stored in databases. The datacard stores four databases—Airports, VORs, NDB's, and Intersections (INT). The NMC (Nav Management Computer) stores User waypoints. It is useful to think of these databases as “drawers” in an electronic “file cabinet.” Each drawer contains “folders,” and each folder represents a *waypoint*, a specific location on the earth. All databases store waypoints according to identifier in alphanumeric order. You may only edit (change) the contents of the User database.

## Airport Database

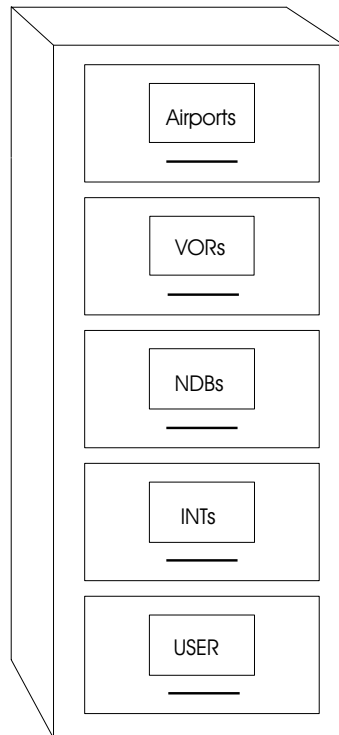
These databases (drawers) contain Airports. A “folder” is maintained for every public-use airport located in the datacard coverage area. Additional information, such as available runways and frequencies, is included for each waypoint.

## VOR/NDB/Intersection Databases

These databases (drawers) contain a “folder” for every VOR, NDB, and Intersection located in the datacard coverage area. Additional information, such as the frequency and facility name of each VOR and NDB, is included.

## User Database

When your new NMC leaves the factory, the User database is empty. You may create, delete, and edit (change) waypoints in the User database. You may also enter a runway length for each User waypoint.



## Database Information

Datacards are inserted in the slot below the knobs and buttons. A datacard may be inserted while the unit is off, or when powered-up. When a datacard is removed and stored, be sure to keep it free from moisture and dust. With a datacard installed, the Nav Management Computer (NMC) can access information about Airports, VORs, NDBs, and Intersections (INT). Other information used by the NMC includes: Airspace, Magnetic Variation, and non-precision approach data. User waypoints and waypoint comments you enter are stored in the NMC.

Database information may include:

### Airport Database

|                                                  |                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Identifier                                       | City, State, and Country                                                                         |
| Facility Name                                    | Bearing from your present position                                                               |
| Distance from your present position              | Any special use airspace area, such as a Class B airspace, the waypoint is located in or beneath |
| Waypoint Elevation                               | Availability of Avgas/Jet fuel                                                                   |
| Available runways                                | Runway Surface                                                                                   |
| Available instrument approaches (ILS, LOC, etc.) | Runway Lighting                                                                                  |
| Latitude/Longitude                               |                                                                                                  |
| Frequencies                                      |                                                                                                  |
| Tower                                            | CTAF                                                                                             |
| Ground                                           | ATIS                                                                                             |
| Instrument Approach                              | Departure/Approach Control                                                                       |
| Clearance Delivery                               | UNICOM                                                                                           |
| MULTICOM                                         |                                                                                                  |

---

**VOR/NDB/INT (Intersection) Databases**

|                                                 |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Identifier                                      | Name                                   |
| City, State, Country                            | Frequency of VOR or NDB                |
| Bearing from your<br>from your present position | Distance from your<br>present position |
| Latitude/Longitude                              |                                        |

**User Database**

|                                        |                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Identifier                             | Bearing from your<br>your present position |
| Distance from your<br>present position | User defined runway length                 |
| Waypoint Latitude/Longitude            |                                            |

## Database Displays

In any mode, information about a displayed waypoint may be shown by pressing the **INFO** button, and turning the **Small** knob. Below are examples of the information pages for the waypoint PDX (Portland International airport).

```
AIRPORT PDX
PORTLAND INTL
FACIL OR USA
```

PDX airport facility name is Portland International, located in Oregon, USA.

```
PPOS TO PDX
BEARING 005°
DISTANCE 44.3NM
```

Present position to PDX. Bearing To PDX is 005°. Distance to PDX is 44.3 nm.

```
PDX AIRPORT
PUBLIC
 ELEV 27FT
```

Portland airport is public use. Elevation is 27 ft above sea level.

```
PDX AIRPORT
AVAILABLE FUEL :
 AVGAS/JET
```

Portland Airport Fuel available is Aviation Gas and Jet Fuel.

```
PDX ATIS 126.35
 UNIC 122.95
 TWR 118.70
```

ATIS frequency is 128.35. Unicom frequency is 122.95. Tower frequency is 118.70.



**Database Displays (continued)**

```
PDX CTAF 118.70
GRND 121.90
CLR 119.10
```

CTAF frequency is 118.70.  
Ground control frequency is 121.90.  
Clearance delivery frequency is 119.10.

```
PDX APPR 118.10
APPR 126.90
APPR 133.00
```

Approach frequency is 118.10.  
Approach frequency is 126.90.  
Approach frequency is 133.00.

```
PDX DEP 118.10
DEP 133.00
```

Departure frequency is 118.10.  
Departure frequency is 133.00.

```
PDX
ILS 109.90
RUNWAY 10R
```

ILS frequency is 109.90.  
Runway 10R

```
PDX
ILS 111.30
RUNWAY 28R
```

ILS frequency is 111.30.  
Runway 28R

```
PDX
LOC 109.90
RUNWAY 28R
```

LOC frequency is 108.90.  
Runway 20

**Database Displays (continued)**

```
PDX 10R/28L
11000FT HARD ILS
LIGHTED
```

PDX runway 10R/28L.  
11,000 feet long with a hard surface and ILS.  
The runway is lighted.

```
PDX 10L/28R
8000FT HARD ILS
LIGHTED
```

PDX runway 10L/28R  
8,000 ft long with a hard surface and ILS.  
The runway is lighted.

```
PDX 02/20
7000FT HARD LOC
LIGHTED
```

PDX runway 02/20  
7000 feet long with a hard surface and LOC.  
The runway is lighted.

```
PDX AIRPORT
LAT 45°35.33N
LON 122°35.78W
```

PDX latitude/longitude in degrees, minutes, and hundredths of minutes.  
45°35.33 North, 122°35.78 West.

```
VERY RAINY
DURING WINTER
BRING BOOTS
```

Waypoint comment has been entered.

```
PDX AIRPORT
PORTLAND
CITY OR USA
```

PDX is an airport, located in Portland, Oregon, USA.

## DB Mode Procedures

### Retrieving a Waypoint

These procedures are used to display a waypoint using the Waypoint Retriever. Waypoints may be retrieved (displayed) by searching according to identifier, city name, or facility name. Before retrieving a waypoint, be sure the data card is inserted in the data card slot.

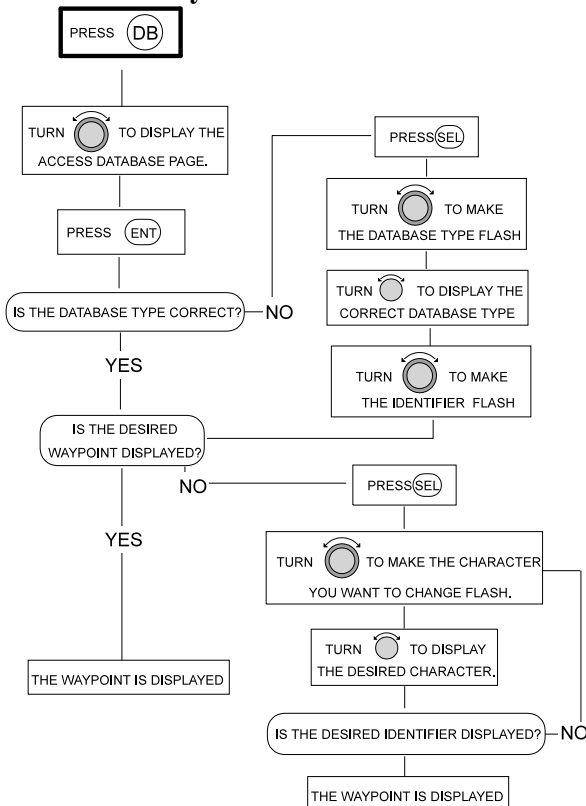
Once the waypoint is displayed—

If you want to navigate directly to the waypoint, press **DIRECT-TO**, then **NAV**.

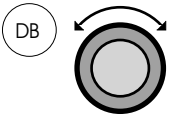

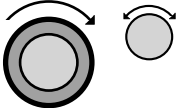
To display information about the waypoint, press **INFO**, and turn the Small knob to view the information displays. To exit the information function, press **INFO** again. The Mode annunciator flashes while the information function is active.

To exit without entering any changes, press any mode button

### Waypoint Retrieval by Identifier

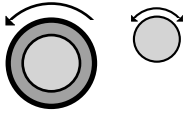


### Waypoint Retrieval by Identifier (continued)

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                        | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.  | In DB mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Access Database page.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">ACCESS DATABASE<br/>PRESS ENT</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">DB</div>                                                                |
| 2.  | Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Waypoint Retriever.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">AIRPORT    AAP<br/>HOUSTON<br/>CITY        TX USA</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">DB</div>                                                                  |
| 3.  | Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to make the database type flash. Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the desired database.<br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">VOR        ABA<br/>ARUBA<br/>FACIL     ANTILL</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">DB</div> |

## Waypoint Retrieval by Identifier (continued)

4.

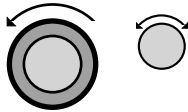


Turn the **Large** knob to make the identifier flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired character. As you turn the **Small** knob, the remaining characters in the identifier also change because the NMC only displays waypoints that exist.

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| VOR    | DAG    |
| DAGGET |        |
| FACIL  | CA USA |

DB

5.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the next character in the waypoint identifier flash. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the character. Repeat to choose the remaining character(s) in the identifier. The desired waypoint is displayed.

|        |        |
|--------|--------|
| VOR    | DEN    |
| DENVER |        |
| FACIL  | CO USA |

DB

### Note

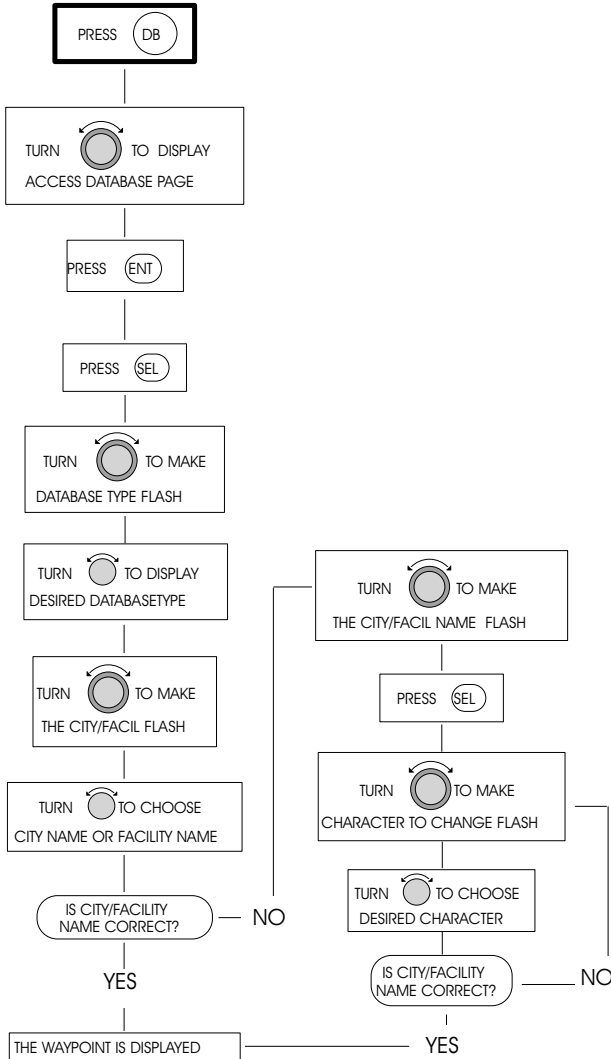


*If you see “DUP” on the 3rd line, there are duplicate facilities with the same identifier. Press **SEL** and use the **Small** knob to view duplicates.*

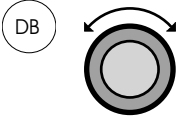

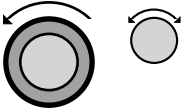
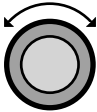
### Retrieving a Waypoint by City/Facility Name

The following procedure is used to retrieve a waypoint by the name of the city in which it is located, or by the name of the waypoint facility. For example, if you did not know the identifier for McNary Field in Salem, Oregon is SLE, you could display the waypoint by searching for the city name, Salem, or by searching for the facility name, McNary Fld. VORs, NDBs, and Intersections do not have city names.

#### Flow Chart



## Retrieving A Waypoint By City\Facility Name (continued)

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p>    | <p>In DB mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Access Database Page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> ACCESS DATABASE<br/> PRESS ENT </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 5px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">DB</span> </div>                                                                  |
| <p>2.</p>    | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Waypoint Retriever.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> VOR            DEN<br/> DENVER<br/> FACIL        CO USA </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 5px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">DB</span> </div>                                                               |
| <p>3.</p>    | <p>Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to make the database type flash. Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the desired database.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> AIRPORT    AAP<br/> HOUSTON<br/> CITY        TX USA </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 5px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">DB</span> </div> |
| <p>4.</p>  | <p>Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to make the Facility/City designator flash.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> AIRPORT    AAP<br/> HOUSTON<br/> CITY        TX USA </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 5px 0;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">DB</span> </div>                                                  |

5.

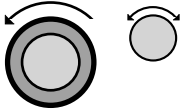


Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired search type — CITY, or FACIL (Facility).

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| AIRPORT | AAP    |
| ANDRAU  |        |
| FACIL   | TX USA |

DB

6.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the City/Facility name flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired character.

|              |        |
|--------------|--------|
| AIRPORT      | QB9    |
| MACGILLIVRAY |        |
| FACIL        | CA USA |

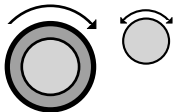
DB

### Note

When you press **SEL** a second time, the selected field will flash. Turn the Small knob to scroll through all items similar to the selected characters. For instance, if you had selected “M” for the first character and “E” as the second character, turning the Small knob will scroll through all names that start with “ME.”



7.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the next character flash. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the character. Repeat to choose the remaining character(s) in the city/facility name. The desired waypoint is displayed.

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| AIRPORT | SLE    |
| MCONARY |        |
| FACIL   | OR USA |

DB




## Waypoint Information and Comments

These procedures are used to display information and personal comments on waypoints. Waypoint information is stored on the data card, and can not be changed. Comments you create are stored in the NMC, and may be edited and deleted. A comment may be entered on any waypoint in any database; however the maximum number of comments that may be stored is 200. To add a new comment once 200 comments have been entered, a previously entered comment must be deleted.

### Displaying Waypoint Information

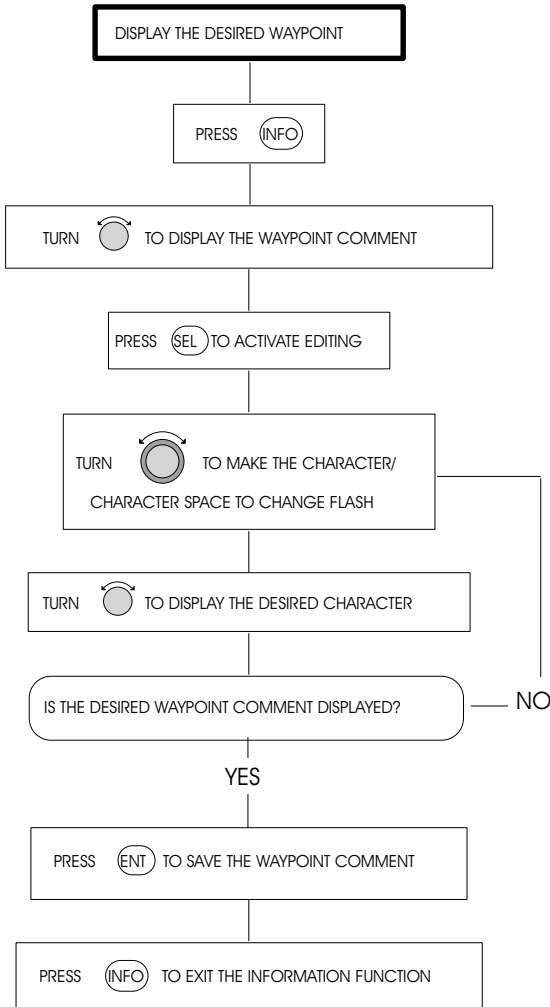
The following procedure is used to display waypoint information stored on a data card. When in NAV mode, pressing **INFO** displays information about the *To* waypoint. In FPL mode, pressing **INFO** displays information about the *To* waypoint for the active leg. In EMRG mode or DB mode, pressing **INFO** displays information about the displayed waypoint. When the INFO function is active, you may scroll through the available information displays on a waypoint by turning the **Small** knob. The mode annunciator flashes when the INFO function is active. In all cases, pressing **INFO** again exits the INFO function.

| <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Display the desired waypoint.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 50%; width: 40px; height: 40px; display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center; margin-right: 10px;">NAV</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-right: 10px;">INFO</div> </div> | <p>In any mode, display the desired waypoint. NAV mode is used in the following example. Any Nav page may be displayed. Pressing <b>INFO</b> in NAV mode displays information on the <i>To</i> waypoint.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0; text-align: center;"> <pre>FROM SNA   ARPT TO   SBA   ARPT NEXT PXN   VOR</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; margin-bottom: 10px;">NAV</div> |
| <p>2.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="text-align: center; margin-right: 10px;">  </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-right: 10px;">INFO</div> </div>                                                              | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to scroll through the available information displays. Pressing <b>INFO</b> again exits the information function.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0; text-align: center;"> <pre>SBA   AIRPORT AVAILABLE FUEL : AVGAS/JET</pre> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">NAV</div>                                                                                      |

### Entering/Editing Waypoint Comments

The following procedure is used to enter or edit a waypoint comment. A waypoint comment is a message you compose. A comment may be entered on any waypoint in any database; however, the NMC stores a maximum of 200 comments.

#### Flow Chart



## Entering/Editing Waypoint Comments (continued)

### Action

### Explanation

1. Display the desired waypoint.

In any mode, display the desired waypoint. In this example, PDX (Portland International) is displayed in DB mode.

```
AIRPORT PDX
PORTLAND
CITY OR USA
```

DB

- 2.

INFO

Pressing **INFO** activates the information function.

```
PDX AIRPORT
PORTLAND INTL
FACIL OR USA
```

DB

- 3.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the waypoint comment page. If a comment on the waypoint has previously been entered, the comment appears instead of the display below.

```
WAYPOINT COMMENT

PRESS SEL
```

DB

### Entering/Editing Waypoint Comments (continued)

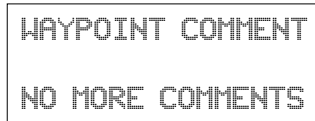
4.



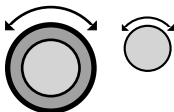
Pressing **SEL** activates comment editing. If a comment on the waypoint has already been entered, the comment appears, and the first character is flashing. If you create a new comment, a flashing cursor appears on an otherwise blank display.



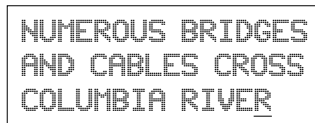
If the NMC is already storing the maximum of 200 comments, the display below appears. You must delete a comment to make room for a new comment.



5.



Turn the **Large** knob to move the cursor, and turn the **Small** knob to choose characters.



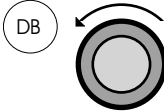

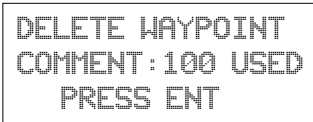






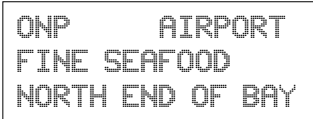

6.



Pressing **ENT** saves the waypoint comment. Press **INFO** to exit the information function.

## Deleting a Waypoint Comment

The following procedure is used to delete a waypoint comment. The NMC will store a maximum of 200 comments. Once 200 comments have been entered, you must delete an existing comment to make room for a new comment.

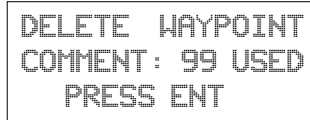
- | <u>Action</u>                                                                          | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1.    | In DB mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Delete Waypoint Comment page. The display shows the number of waypoint comments currently entered.                                                                      |
| 2.    | <br>                                                        |
| 2.    | Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Delete Waypoint Comment function. The top line shows the identifier and database of the associated waypoint. The middle and bottom lines display the first 2 lines of the waypoint comment. |
| 3.  | <br>                                                    |
| 3.  | Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to scroll to the comment to be deleted. The comments are displayed in alphanumeric order according to identifier.                                                                                  |
|                                                                                        | <br>                                                    |

## Deleting a Waypoint Comment (continued)

4.

A rectangular button with rounded corners containing the text "ENT".

Pressing **ENT** deletes the displayed waypoint comment. Pressing any mode button instead of **ENT** exits the Delete Waypoint Comment function without deleting a comment.

A rectangular screen with a black border containing the text "DELETE WAYPOINT COMMENT : 99 USED PRESS ENT" in a monospaced font.

```
DELETE WAYPOINT
COMMENT : 99 USED
PRESS ENT
```

A small rectangular button with rounded corners containing the text "DB".

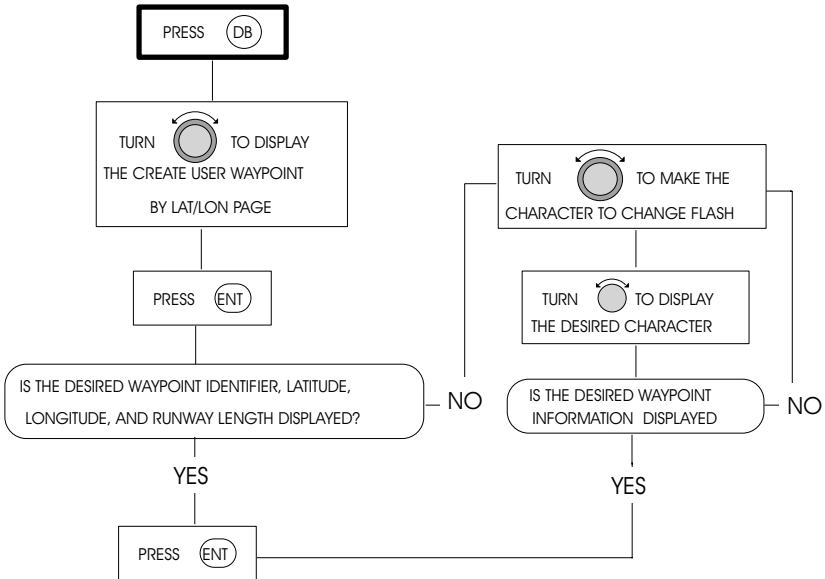
## User Waypoints

User waypoints are waypoints entered and named by you. You may create a User waypoint at any location by entering Latitude/Longitude coordinates, or by entering the radial/distance from another waypoint. If you create a User waypoint by entering a radial/distance, the NMC will calculate the Latitude/Longitude of the waypoint. **You should understand the use of the Waypoint Retriever before executing procedures in this section. The waypoint Retriever is described in DB Mode Procedures, “Retrieving a Waypoint” on page 115.**

### Creating a User Waypoint by Latitude/Longitude

The following procedure is used to create a User waypoint by entering latitude/longitude coordinates. If there are already 500 User waypoints, you must delete a previously entered User waypoint to make room for a new waypoint. For more information, refer to Operations, *Deleting a User Waypoint*.

### Flow Chart

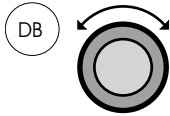


## Creating a User Waypoint by Latitude/Longitude (continued)

### Action

### Explanation

1.



In DB mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Create User Waypoint by Lat/Lon page.

```
CREATE USER WPT
BY LAT/LON
PRESS ENT
```

DB

If the maximum of 500 User waypoints already exist, the display below appears, and you must delete a User waypoint before you may create a new waypoint.

```
CREATE USER WPT
BY LAT/LON
DATABASE FULL
```

DB

2.

A rectangular button labeled 'ENT'.

Pressing the **ENT** button displays an open User waypoint page. The waypoint identifier defaults to the next unused numerical identifier (from #000 to #499). The latitude and longitude default to the present position, and the runway length defaults to 0000'.

```
#005 USER
44°54.58N RWLEN
123°00.08W 0000
```

DB

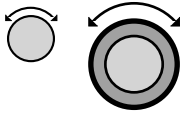


## Creating a User Waypoint by Latitude/Longitude (cont'd)

### Hint

*If you want to quickly establish a waypoint as you fly over a position, you may choose to accept the automatically assigned numerical identifier instead of naming the waypoint. Pressing **ENT** at this point in the procedure eliminates the need to execute steps 3 and 4.*

3.



Turn the Small knob to display the desired character. Turn the Large knob to make the next character you want to change flash. Repeat to edit the identifier, Latitude, longitude, and the runway length. The identifier may contain up to six characters. When a waypoint is created at the location of the waypoint, it is not necessary to edit the position coordinates (Latitude/Longitude).

```

HOME USER
 44° 54.58N RWLEN
 123° 00.08W 2800

```

**DB**

4.



Press **ENT** to store the waypoint in memory.

```

CREATE USER WPT
 BY LAT/LON
 PRESS ENT

```

**DB**

If a duplicate identifier is entered, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds. The NMC then displays the waypoint editing page so you can change the identifier.

```

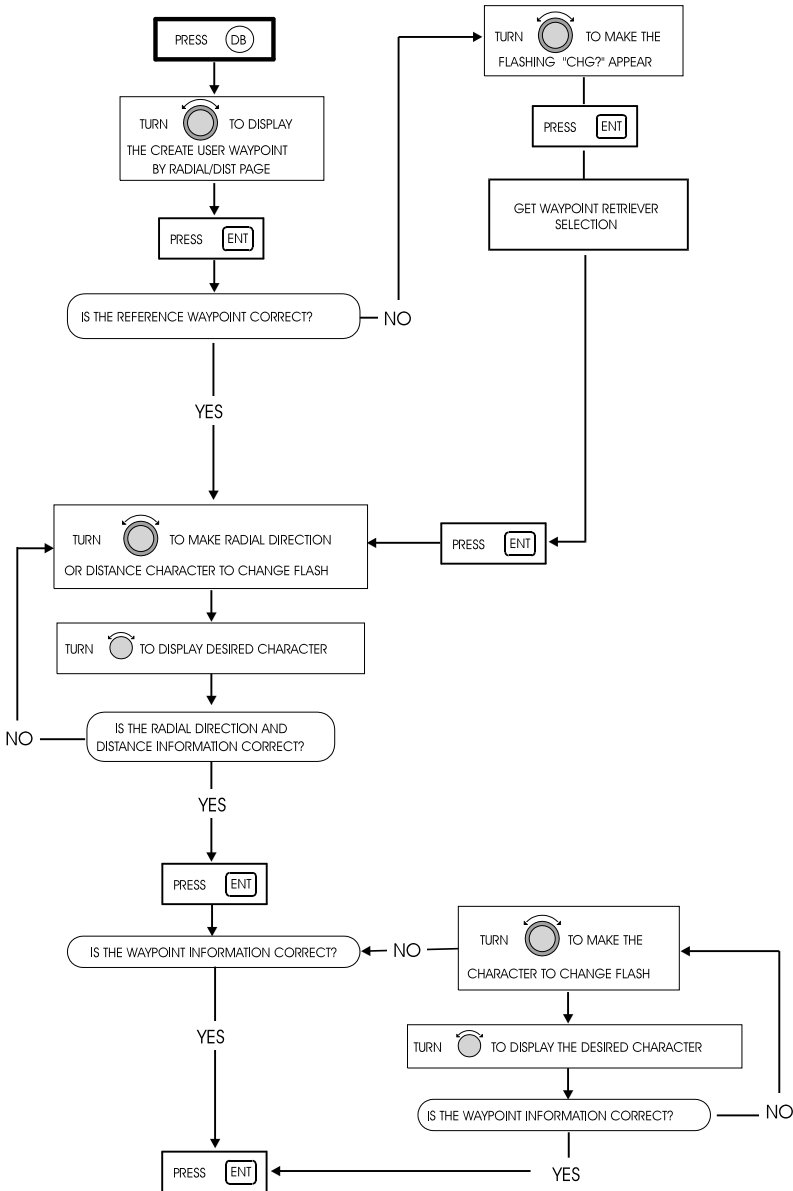
DUPLICATE USER
WAYPOINT IDENT
NOT ALLOWED

```

**DB**

### Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance

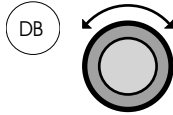
The NMC allows you to create User waypoints by specifying the radial and distance from an existing waypoint. This reference waypoint may be in any database, including the User database. Do not “chain” radial/distance waypoints. If you create a waypoint by radial/distance using another radial/distance waypoint as the reference point, position errors caused by rounding or conversion are cumulative.



## Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance (continued)

### Action

1.



### Explanation

In DB mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Create User Waypoint By Radial/Dist page.

```
CREATE USER WPT
BY RADIAL/DIST
PRESS ENT
```

DB

If the maximum of 500 User waypoints already exist, the display below appears, and you must delete a User waypoint before you may create a new waypoint.

```
CREATE USER WPT
BY RADIAL/DIST
PRESS ENT
```

DB

2.



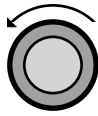
Pressing **ENT** displays the Reference Waypoint Entry page. If the desired reference waypoint identifier is displayed, skip to step 8.

```
REF WPT: AAP
000.0° 000.0NM
```

DB

## Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance (continued)

3.



Turn the **Large** knob so that “CHG?” flashes in place of the reference waypoint identifier.

```
REF WPT: CHG?
000.0° 000.0NM
```

DB

4.



Pressing **ENT** activates the Waypoint Retriever.

```
AIRPORT AAP
HOUSTON
CITY TX USA
```

DB

5. Display the desired waypoint.

Use the Waypoint Retriever to display the desired waypoint. The Waypoint Retriever is described in Operations, *Retrieving a Waypoint*.

```
AIRPORT ONP
NEWPORT
CITY OR USA
```

DB

## Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance (continued)

8.

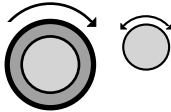


Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed waypoint as the reference waypoint, and displays the Reference Waypoint page. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the first radial value number.

```
REF WPT: ONP
100.0° 000.0NM
```

DB

9.



Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to choose the remaining numbers in the radial and distance values.

```
REF WPT: ONP
165.0° 011.1NM
```

DB

10.



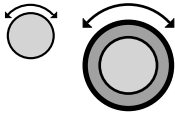
Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed Radial/Distance values. The NMC calculates the latitude/longitude, and displays the User Waypoint Edit page.

```
#006 USER
44°23.72N RWLEN
124°04.21W 0000
```

DB

## Creating a User Waypoint by Radial/Distance (continued)

11.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired character. Turn the **Large** knob to make the next character you want to change flash. Repeat as necessary to edit the identifier, latitude, longitude, and the runway length. The identifier may contain a maximum of six characters.

```
ALSEA USER
44°23.72N RWLEN
124°04.21W 1000
```

DB

12.



Press **ENT** to store the waypoint in memory.

```
CREATE USER WPT
BY RADIAN/DIST
PRESS ENT
```

DB

If a duplicate identifier is entered, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds. The NMC then displays the waypoint editing page so you can change the identifier.

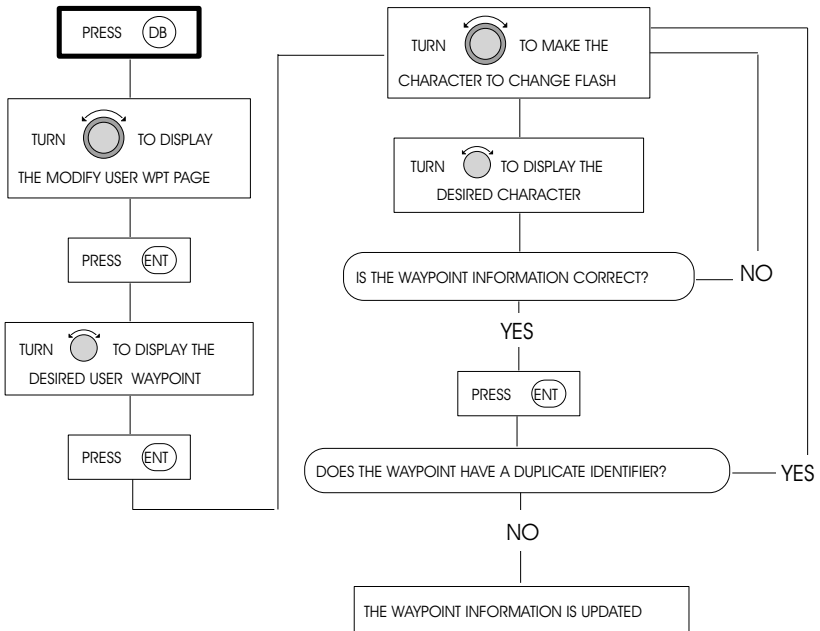
```
DUPLICATE USER
WAYPOINT IDENT
NOT ALLOWED
```

DB

## Editing a User Waypoint

The following procedure is used to change the identifier, latitude/longitude coordinates, or runway length of an existing User waypoint.

### Flow Chart

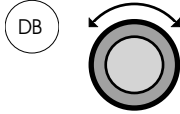


### Editing a User Waypoint (continued)

#### Action

#### Explanation

1.



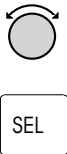
In DB mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Modify User Waypoint page.



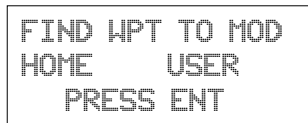
If there are no User waypoints stored, the display below appears.



2.



The NMC displays the Find Waypoint to Modify page. Turn the **Small** knob to Modify page. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired waypoint. If desired, you may press **SEL** to activate character editing to display the waypoint; however, this is generally unnecessary unless there are a large number of User waypoints.





## Editing a User Waypoint (continued)

3.



Pressing **ENT** retrieves the waypoint, and activates editing.

```

HOME USER
44° 54.58N RWLEN
123° 00.08W 0000

```

**DB**

If the waypoint is in the Active flight plan, it cannot be modified, and the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds. The Find Waypoint to Modify page is then displayed.

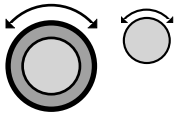
```

WAYPOINT IS IN
ACTIVE PLAN
CANNOT MODIFY

```

**DB**

4.



Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs as necessary to edit the identifier, Latitude/Longitude, and runway length.

```

HOME USER
44° 54.58N RWLEN
123° 00.10W 2300

```

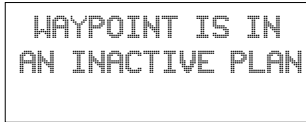
**DB**

### Editing a User Waypoint (continued)

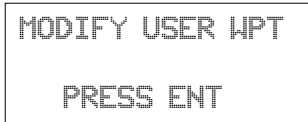
5.



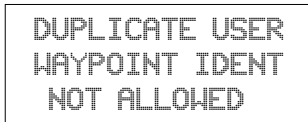
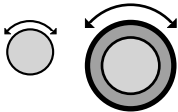
Press **ENT** to save the changes. If the waypoint is in an inactive flight plan, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds.



After 3 seconds, or if the waypoint is not in a flight plan, the display below appears.



If a duplicate identifier is entered, the display below appears for approximately 3 seconds. The NMC then returns to the waypoint editing page so you can change the identifier using the **Small** and **Large** knobs.



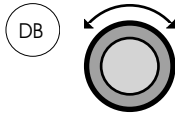
## Deleting a User Waypoint

The following procedure is used to delete a User waypoint. This may be necessary to make room for a new User waypoint.

### Action

### Explanation

1.



In DB mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Delete User Waypoint page.

```
DELETE USER WPT
PRESS ENT
```

DB

If there are no User waypoints stored, the display below appears.

```
DELETE USER WPT
DATABASE EMPTY
```

DB

2.



SEL

The NMC displays the Find Waypoint to Delete page. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired waypoint. If desired, you may press **SEL** to activate character editing to display the waypoint; however, this is generally unnecessary unless there are a large number of User waypoints.

```
FIND WPT TO MOD
HOME USER
PRESS ENT
```

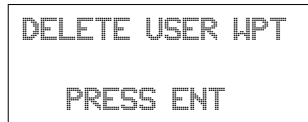
DB

## Deleting a User Waypoint (continued)

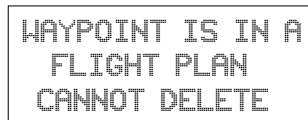
3.



Pressing **ENT** deletes the waypoint. Pressing any mode button instead of **ENT** exits this function without deleting a waypoint.



The NMC will not delete any User waypoint included in a flight plan. If this is attempted, the following display appears for approximately 3 seconds. The NMC then displays the Find Waypoint to Delete page.



## FPL (Flight Plan) Mode

Flight plans are specific routes between waypoints you may store in the NMC's memory. The NMC uses this information to calculate useful flight statistics.

Flight Plan mode allows you to have up to 30 stored flight plans. Twentynine of these flight plans are Inactive, waiting to be used at any time for navigation. Each flight plan may have up to 20 legs.

The Active flight plan is always used for the current flight. Inactive flight plans may be activated in Flight Plan mode to become the Active flight plan.

Flight Plan Leg pages display *From* and *To* waypoint identifiers on the top line of the display screen. The leg number which is being displayed is shown first on the second line, along with the bearing and distance between the *From* and *To* waypoints. One asterisk (\*) next to the leg number means that the displayed leg is in the Active flight plan. Two asterisks (\*\*) means that the displayed leg shows the current *From* and *To* waypoints which are being used for navigation.

The third line of the Flight Plan Leg pages shows Leg Information. This information may be customized to display one of several types of information related to the displayed flight plan leg (see *Leg Info Options*).

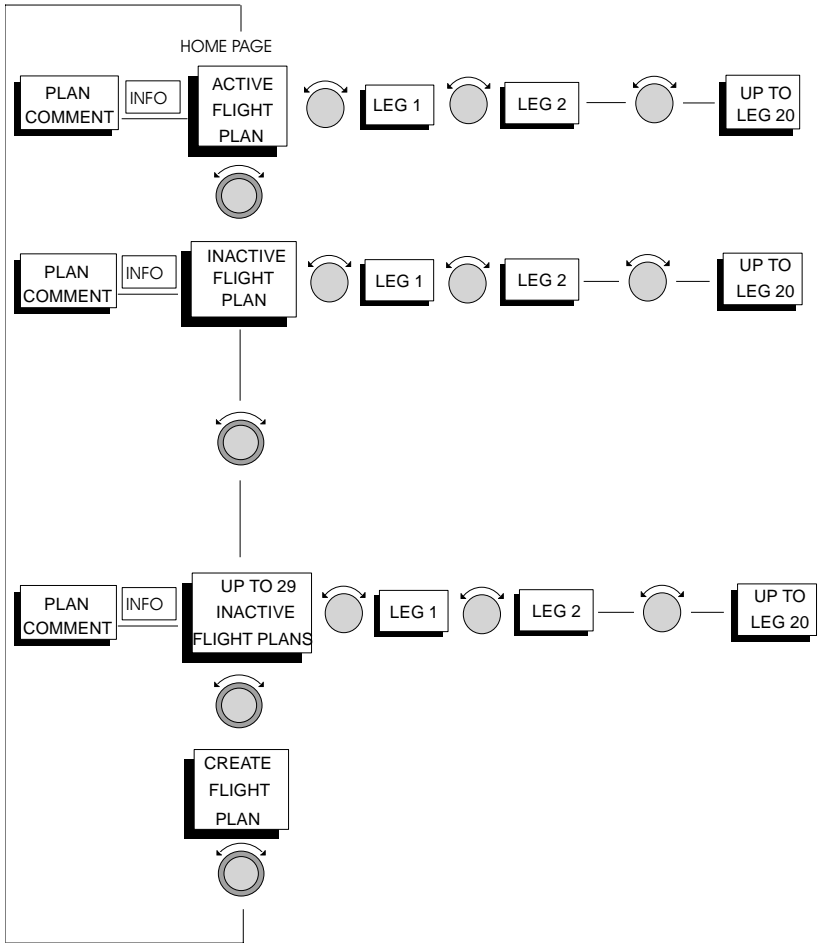
An approach, when loaded, is a sequence of waypoints. The approach waypoints start at an Initial Approach Fix (IAF) and end at a Missed Approach Holding Point (MAHP). The approach is inserted into the active flight plan and replaces the destination airport.

### Note



*When an approach is loaded, the destination airport identifier is no longer in the active flight plan. If you want to look up information for the destination airport, such as frequencies, press **FPL** twice and then press **INFO**.*

The figure below illustrates the organization of Flight Plan mode.



## Flight Plan Summary Pages

The Flight Plan Summary page displays the flight plan's name, total distance, destination waypoint, and its status (Inactive, Active, or Hold). One of the Flight Plan Summary pages is used only to create a new Inactive flight plan. An example of a Flight Plan Summary page is shown below. If an approach is loaded, the destination waypoint (DEST WPT) is replaced with an approach airport (APPR APT).

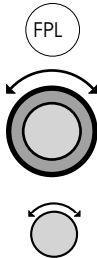
### Flight Plan Summary Page

```
PDXTOSLE 50.8NM
DEST WPT: SLE
INACTIVE
```

FPL

The flight plan above is named PDXTOSLE, and the total distance of all legs in the flight plan is 50.8 nautical miles. The flight status is Inactive (not currently being used for navigation).

#### Action



#### Explanation


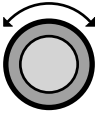

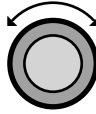
Press **FPL** to enter FLIGHT PLAN mode, then rotate the **Large** knob to display the desired Flight Plan Summary page. Turn the **Small** knob to view each of the Flight Plan legs.

```
PDX TO MMV
1 205° 32.8NM
ARPT ARPT
```

FPL

This Flight Plan leg is from PDX to MMV (line 1). This screen shows the waypoints for Leg 1. The bearing is 205° and the range is 32.8 nm between the two waypoints (line 2). The FROM waypoint, PDX, is an airport and the TO waypoint, MMV, is an airport (line 3).

## Creating a Flight Plan

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; gap: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> </div> | <p>Press <b>FPL</b> to enter FLIGHT PLAN mode, then rotate the <b>Large</b> knob to display the flight plan creation page, shown below.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       PRESS SEL TO<br/>CREATE A NEW<br/>FLIGHT PLAN     </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">FPL</div>               |
| <p>2.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">SEL</div> </div>                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Press <b>SEL</b> to start flight plan creation. The first character position will flash.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       _ _ _ _ _<br/>ENTER A NEW<br/>PLAN NAME     </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">FPL</div>                                                                 |
| <p>3.</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; gap: 20px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> </div> | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to choose characters. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to move the cursor. The flight plan name may have up to eight characters.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       COA_ _ _ _ _<br/>ENTER A NEW<br/>PLAN NAME     </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">FPL</div> |
| <p>4.</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">ENT</div> </div>                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Press <b>ENT</b> to save the name and create a flight plan.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">       TURN SMALL KNOB<br/>TO INS WPTS OR<br/>SEL FOR OPTIONS     </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">FPL</div>                                                                               |



After about 2 seconds, the Flight Plan Summary page (shown below) will be displayed, indicating that the new Inactive flight plan has been created.



```

COAST 0.0NM
DEST WPT: ----
INACTIVE

```

The new Inactive flight plan above is named “COAST.” Since it was just created, the first and last waypoints are blank, and the total flight plan distance is 0.0 nautical miles.

## Inserting and Editing Flight Plan Legs

Waypoints in a flight plan may be inserted, deleted, or changed to another waypoint at any time in Flight Plan mode. In addition, the third line of the Flight Plan Leg pages may be customized to display one of several types of information.

INS? allows you to insert a waypoint into the flight plan.

CHG? allows you to change an existing waypoint in the flight plan.

DEL? allows you to delete a waypoint in the flight plan.

Use the short description given previously to view the desired Flight Plan Leg page, then follow the directions below for editing the leg.

### Action

1.

### Explanation

The first time a waypoint is entered into a flight plan, the Flight Plan Leg page will look like this.

```

-----TO-----
1 PRESS SEL
 TO EDIT LEG

```

If waypoints have already been entered, the Flight Plan Leg page may be similar to this.

```
SLE TO HIO
1** 346° 37.9NM
ARPT ARPT
```

FPL

2.

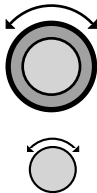


Pressing **SEL** will start the cursor flashing, indicating that Flight Plan Leg page editing has begun.

```
CHG? TO HIO
1** 346° 37.9NM
ARPT ARPT
```

FPL

3.

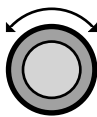


Rotate the **Large** knob to move the cursor  
Turn the **Small** knob to view available fields.

```
CHG? TO HIO
1** 346° 37.9NM
ARPT ARPT
```

FPL

4.



Rotate the **Large** knob to move the cursor, in this case to the *To* waypoint of the displayed leg.

```
SLE TO CHG?
1** 346° 37.9NM
ARPT ARPT
```

FPL

5.



Rotate the **Small** knob to view the desired option where the cursor is flashing.

```
SLE TO INS?
1** 346° 37.9NM
ARPT ARPT
```

**FPL**

Pressing **ENT** when the correct option is flashing enters the flashing option. The meaning and handling of the flashing options are described next. Press **SEL** to stop editing.

### Manually Selecting a Flight plan Leg

Approach operations often result in the need to manually select a leg of the active flight plan. Manual leg selection will often be required when operating with Radar vectors and there is the need to intercept an approach course. It may also occur when flying a DME-ARC to intercept an approach course.

1.

**FPL**

**FPL**



Press **FPL** twice to reach your active flight plan. Then turn the **Small** knob to display the desired leg.

```
LGD TO BKE
2* 146° 28.2NM
ARPT IAF
```

2.

**ENT**

Press **ENT**.

```
LGD BKE
PRESS ENT
TO ACTIVATE LEG
```

3.

**ENT**

Press **ENT** to accept the displayed destination waypoint. The unit will then go to NAV mode.

```
ETE BKE 00:05
+ 0.006
BRG 146° 27.7NM
```

## Updating Leg Information

The bottom line of Flight Plan Leg pages is used to display the customizable Leg Information. Several types of Leg Information may be selected for viewing, and are described next in *Leg Information Options*.

With the cursor flashing on the third line of the display screen, rotate the **Small** knob to display each of the Leg Information fields.

```
SLE TO HIO
1** 346° 37.9NM
ETA 07:32
```

FPL

Press **ENT** when the field of your choice is flashing to make the displayed Leg Information available on each of the flight plan legs in the current flight plan.

## Leg Information Options

A list of each Leg Information option, along with explanations of their meanings, is given next. The Leg Information is viewed on the third line of the displayed Flight Plan Leg page.

Waypoint Type

```
ARPT VOR
```

FPL

The Waypoint Type field displays which type of waypoint each waypoint in the flight plan is. The example above shows that the From waypoint of the displayed leg is an Airport, and the To waypoint of the displayed leg is a VOR. The waypoint type option is “locked” for loaded approach waypoints so they can easily identified as “IAF, FAF, MAP, and MAHP.”

ETA

```
ETA 07:32
```

FPL

The ETA field shows the Estimated Time of Arrival at the To waypoint of the currently displayed leg of the Active flight plan only. The Active flight plan ETA uses the plane’s actual ground speed, and is the ETA from the latest known position. If actual ground speed is 5 knots or less, the time is dashed (—:—).

ETA?


 A rectangular box containing the text "ETA? 03:52".


 A small blue square icon with the white text "FPL".

The ETA? field shows the Estimated Time of Arrival at the To waypoint of the currently displayed leg of the flight plan. ETA? uses the Estimated Ground Speed value (described in *Using Flight Plan Summary Options*) to figure the ETA.

In the Active flight plan, ETA? uses the latest available position as the starting reference point. In inactive flight plans, the beginning of the flight plan is used as the starting point reference position. If the Estimated Ground Speed is 5 knots or less, the time is dashed (—:—).

LEG ETE


 A rectangular box containing the text "LEG ETE: 02:21".


 A small blue square icon with the white text "FPL".

Leg ETE shows the Estimated Time En route to travel from the displayed leg's *From* waypoint to the displayed leg's *To* waypoint. It uses the actual ground speed for calculations, and is only available in the Active flight plan. The time is dashed (—:—) if the actual ground speed is 5 knots or less.

LEG ETE?


 A rectangular box containing the text "LEG ETE?: 02:21".


 A small blue square icon with the white text "FPL".

Leg ETE? shows the Estimated Time En route to travel from the displayed leg's *From* waypoint to the displayed leg's *To* waypoint using the Estimated Ground Speed value (described previously in *Using Flight Plan Summary Options*). If the Estimated Ground Speed is 5 knots or less, the time is dashed (—:—).

ETE


 A rectangular box containing the text "ETE : 01:41".


 A small blue square icon with the white text "FPL".

ETE shows the Estimated Time En route to the currently displayed *To* waypoint of the Active flight plan. ETE is calculated from the latest available position, and uses the actual ground speed of the aircraft. If the actual ground speed is 5 knots or less, the time is dashed (—:—).

ETE?

|              |
|--------------|
| ETE? : 01:41 |
|--------------|

FPL

The ETE? field shows the Estimated Time En route to the *To* waypoint of the currently displayed leg of the flight plan, using the Estimated Ground Speed value (described previously in *Using the Flight Plan Summary Options*) to figure the ETE.

In the Active flight plan, ETE? uses the latest available position as the starting reference point. In Inactive flight plans, the beginning of the flight plan is used as the starting point reference position. The time is dashed (—:—) if the Estimated Ground Speed is 5 knots or less.

FUEL TO

|               |
|---------------|
| FUEL TO 15USG |
|---------------|

FPL

Fuel To is the amount of fuel which will be expended to travel from the current position to the displayed leg's *To* waypoint. Fuel To calculations require a Fuel/Air Data Sensor on NAVNET, and a ground speed greater than 20 knots in order to be valid. If not valid, the number is dashed.

The units of fuel displayed may be edited in System Mode to display in US Gallons, Imperial Gallons, Liters, Pounds of Jet Fuel A, Pounds of AvGas, Pounds of JP4, Kilos of JP4, Kilos of Jet Fuel A, or Kilos of AvGas.

FUEL TO?

|               |
|---------------|
| FUEL TO 15USG |
|---------------|

FPL

Fuel To? works the same as the previous Fuel To description, except the Estimated Fuel Flow (described previously in *Using Flight Plan Summary Options*) is used as an input to the calculation.

The Active flight plan also uses the actual ground speed to calculate the Fuel To?; the Inactive flight plans use the Estimated Ground Speed value (described previously in *Using Flight Plan Summary Options*). If these inputs are not available, the number is dashed.

The units of fuel displayed may be edited in System Mode to US Gallons, Imperial Gallons, Liters, Pounds of Jet Fuel A, Pounds of AvGas, Pounds of JP4, Kilos of JP4, Kilos of Jet Fuel A, or Kilos of AvGas .

## FUEL AT

```
FUEL AT 12USG
```

**FPL**

Fuel At is the fuel remaining at the displayed leg's *To* waypoint. Fuel At information is only available for the Active flight plan with a Fuel/Air Data Sensor installed on NAVNET, and a ground speed of greater than 20 knots. If these inputs are not available, the number is dashed.

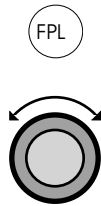
The units of fuel displayed may be edited in System Mode to US Gallons, Imperial Gallons, Liters, Pounds of Jet Fuel A, Pounds of AvGas, Pounds of JP4, Kilos of JP4, Kilos of Jet Fuel A, or Kilos of AvGas.

### Using Flight Plan Comments

You may edit and save one screen of user-input information for each flight plan. This information is called the Flight Plan Comment, and is accessed from a Flight Plan Summary page.

#### Action

1.



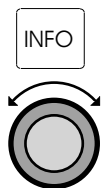
#### Explanation

Press **FPL** to enter FLIGHT PLAN mode, then rotate the **Large** knob to display the desired Flight Plan Summary page. All Flight Plan Summary pages are accessed by rotating the **Large** knob in Flight Plan mode.

```
VALLEY 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
INACTIVE
```

**FPL**

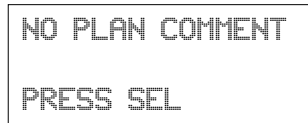
2.



Press **INFO** and turn the **Large** knob CCW one position to access the user-input information for the displayed flight plan. The FPL light will begin flashing to remind you that you are accessing INFO. If the Flight Plan Comment has been entered, it will now be displayed.



If the Flight Plan Comment has not been entered for the flight plan, the following page is displayed to prompt you to press **SEL** to begin entering a Flight Plan comment.



3.



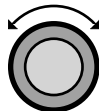
Press **SEL** to edit the Flight Plan Comment.



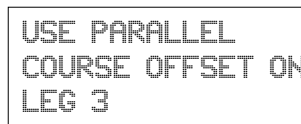
The first time the comment is edited, the screen will be cleared, as shown below, and the cursor will be flashing on the first character of the screen. Each time afterwards, pressing **SEL** will allow you to edit the previously entered Flight Plan Comment.



4.



Rotate the **Small** and **Large** knobs to input characters and move the flashing cursor.





5.

ENT

Press **ENT** to save the Flight Plan Comment. The flashing cursor will stop, and you will be viewing the entered Flight Plan Comment. The Flight Plan light will still be flashing, indicating that you are still viewing INFO. Press **INFO** to end the Flight Plan Comment access, and to redisplay the Flight Plan Summary page.

INFO

```
USE PARALLEL
COURSE OFFSET ON
LEG 3
```

FPL

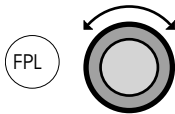
## Accessing Flight Plan Summary Options

Several Flight Plan Summary Options are available to assist you in maintaining your flight plans when the Flight Plan Summary page is displayed. Shown below is a simple explanation for accessing these Flight Plan Summary Options. A more detailed explanation of the purpose of each of these options is given later.

### Action

### Explanation

1.



Press **FPL** to enter FLIGHT PLAN mode, then rotate the **Large** knob to display the desired Flight Plan Summary page.

```
VALLEY 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
INACTIVE
```

FPL

2.

SEL

When the correct Flight Plan Summary page is displayed, press **SEL** to start the flashing cursor. The first Flight Plan Summary Option will be flashing on the bottom line of the display screen.

```
VALLEY 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
ACTIVE?
```

FPL

3.



Rotate the **Small** knob to view all available Flight Plan Summary Options. Which options are available depend on the number of waypoints in a flight plan and the flight plan's status (Inactive, Active, or Hold). Press **ENT** to save your choice.

```

VALLEY 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
REVERSE?

```

FPL

### Using Flight Plan Summary Options

A list of each Flight Plan Summary Option, along with explanations of their meanings, is given below.

Activate?

```

VALLEY 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
ACTIVATE?

```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Activate?” is displayed copies the Inactive flight plan into the Active plan. The new Active flight plan is activated with the new waypoint information. Waypoint sequencing then starts from leg #1. Navigation information, such as Desired Track and CDI, uses the newly activated flight plan's waypoints. The original copy of the Inactive flight plan is not affected.

Load Approach

```

"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
LOAD APPROACH?

```

FPL

Press **ENT** to select an approach for the destination airport. Select the desired approach with the **Small** knob and then press **ENT**. See the Approach Procedures section for more detailed information.

Hold?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
HOLD?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Hold?” is displayed prevents the sequencing of legs in the Active flight plan, effectively putting the Active flight plan on Hold at the current *To* waypoint. “HOLD” may also be activated in the FROM/TO/NEXT page in NAV mode or by pressing the external **OBS/HLD** button when installed.

Continue?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
CONTINUE?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Continue?” is displayed releases the Active flight plan from *Hold*, allowing leg sequencing to continue beyond the current *To* waypoint.

Reverse?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
REVERSE?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Reverse?” is displayed reverses the order of all waypoints in the Inactive flight plan.

Rev Activate?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
REV ACTIVATE?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Rev Activate?” is displayed activates the Inactive or Active flight plan in reverse waypoint order. Using this option on an Inactive flight plan does not affect the original copy of the Inactive plan.

Reactivate?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
 REACTIVATE?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Reactivate?” is displayed restarts the Active flight plan, starting sequencing from leg #1.

Rename Plan?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
 RENAME PLAN?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Rename Plan?” is displayed allows you to rename an Inactive flight plan. After pressing **ENT**, rotate the **Large** and **Small** knobs to rename the flight plan, then press **ENT** to save the new flight plan name.

Copy Plan?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
 COPY PLAN?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when the “Copy Plan?” option is flashing allows you to copy a flight plan’s waypoints from an existing plan into the current flight plan. You can also copy a flight plan’s waypoints between another NMC (when installed) and the current plan. After pressing **ENT**, rotate the **Small** knob to select the name of the flight plan containing the waypoints you wish to copy. Then, press **ENT** to copy that flight plan’s waypoints into the current flight plan. The Copy Plan function is a way to save an active flight plan that has been modified under a new name.

Delete Plan?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
 DELETE PLAN?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when “Delete Plan?” is displayed deletes all of the displayed Inactive flight plan, including the flight plan’s summary page. (Also see *Creating Inactive Flight Plans*).

## Clear Waypoints?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
CLEAR WAYPOINTS?
```

FPL

Pressing ENT when “Clear Waypoints?” is displayed removes all of the leg waypoints from the flight plan, active or inactive. If this option is used on the Active flight plan, all of the leg waypoints are removed. This will remove the destination waypoint and all Nav data will be flagged as invalid until a new destination is selected.

## Est Gr Speed?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
EST GR SPEED?
```

FPL

Estimated Ground Speed assists in calculating ETE? and ETA? for each of the legs of the displayed flight plan when actual ground speed is not available. The plane’s actual ground speed is used by the Active flight plan whenever traveling faster than 20 knots. On the other hand, Inactive flight plans always use the Estimated Ground Speed value for ETA and ETE leg estimations. This option is especially useful for pre-flight planning. After pressing ENT, rotate the Small and Large knobs until the desired Estimated Ground Speed is displayed, then press ENT again to store it.

## Est Fuel Flow?

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
EST FUEL FLOW?
```

FPL

Estimated Fuel Flow assists in calculating Fuel To? information for each leg of the displayed flight plan. This option is useful for both pre-flight and in-flight estimations of fuel requirements. The “?” indicates an estimate. If the Fuel Flow/Air Data Sensor is installed, the *actual* fuel flow is used by the Active flight plan whenever possible.

## Arm Oceanic

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
ARM OCEANIC?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when the “Arm Oceanic” option is flashing, arms the Oceanic flight phase when the phase is inactive and the Oceanic function is enabled.

## Activation Altitude

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
ACT ALT: 18000FT
ARM OCEANIC
```

FPL

After pressing the **ENT** button, the second line of the display changes to show the Oceanic Activation Altitude flashing. Press the **ENT** button to accept the altitude. Rotate the **Small** knob **CW** to increase the altitude in 100 ft increments, or **CCW** to decrease the altitude in 100 ft increments. Press **ENT** when the desired altitude is displayed.

## Cancel Oceanic

```
"ACTIVE" 364NM
DEST WPT: EUG
CANCEL OCEANIC?
```

FPL

Pressing **ENT** when the “Cancel Oceanic” option is flashing, deactivates the Oceanic flight phase when the phase is armed or active independent of the current altitude.

## Direct-To and the Active Flight Plan

When a Direct-To waypoint is entered following the use of the **DIRECT-TO** button, the Active flight plan is updated to reflect the change. The currently active *From* waypoint of the Active flight plan is changed to DIRECT, to reflect that you are now flying directly to the *To* waypoint.

The example below shows the Active flight plan's active leg display after entering a "Direct-To" course to HIO.

### Flight Plan Leg Page

```
DIRECT TO HIO
1** 346° 37.9NM

ARPT
```

FPL

Direct-To may be canceled at any time by deleting the DIRECT signifier from the Flight Plan Leg page. This is done exactly as if you were deleting a waypoint. The old waypoint which was previously entered as the leg's From waypoint will then be redisplayed.

In some cases, you may wish to fly Direct-To a waypoint in the Active flight plan which is not the current To waypoint. You may easily do this by viewing the Flight Plan Leg page which displays the desired waypoint as the "To" waypoint identifier. Then, press **DIRECT-TO** and **ENT**. The flight plan is updated to go Direct-To the selected waypoint from your present position. Once you get there, leg sequencing will continue past the Direct-To waypoint in the usual way.

**NOTES**



## System (SYS) Mode

SYS (System) mode is used to display information and enter settings and adjustments into the Apollo NMS (Navigation Management System).

SYS mode is divided into four “sub-states.” After entering SYS mode, turning the **Large** knob scrolls through the sub-states. The four sub-states are:

**Navigation Info** - Functions pertaining to navigation information, such as Airspace Setup, NAV Mode Display Programming, and Autonav time.

**System Info** - Functions pertaining to the Apollo NMS, such as displaying the Software Version, and entering the Owner’s name.

**Position Sensors** - Functions pertaining to the position sensors, such as displaying Loran or GPS sensor data.

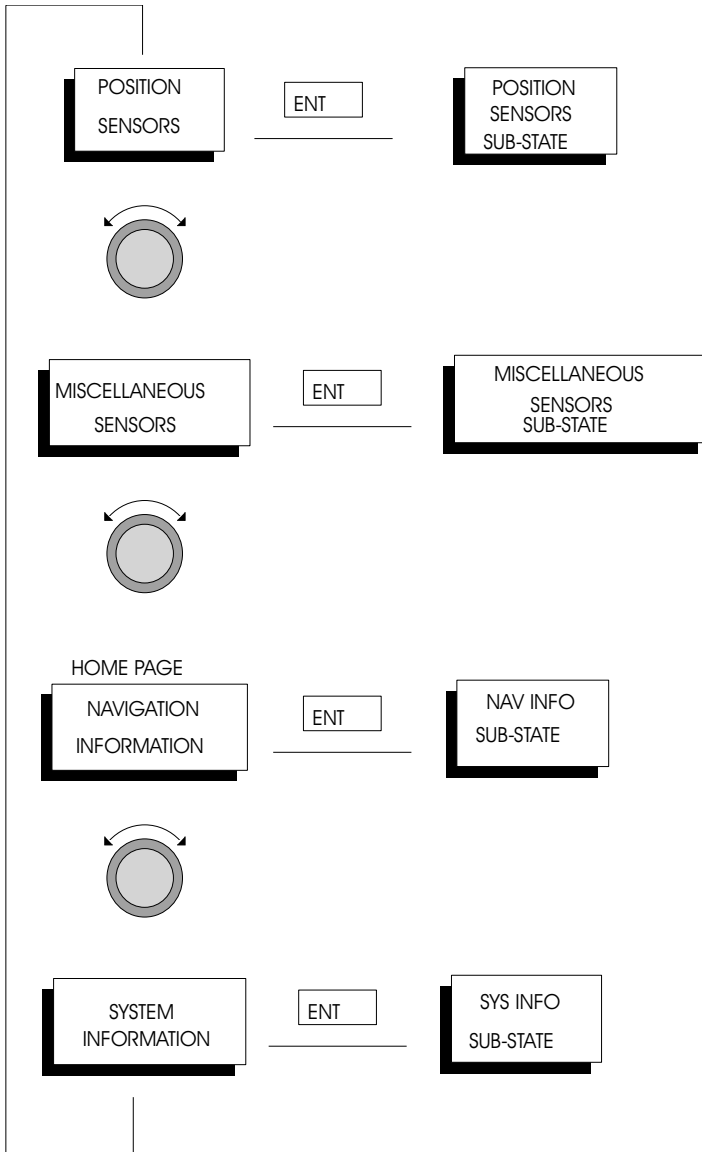
**Miscellaneous Sensors** - Functions pertaining to the F/ADS (Fuel/Air Data Sensor) and the altitude encoder.

### **Important**

*When you enter SYS mode, the page displayed is the page that was displayed the last time you were working in SYS mode. To display the Home (beginning) page in SYS mode, press the **SYS** mode button again.*

### System Mode

The figure below illustrates the organization of SYS Mode.



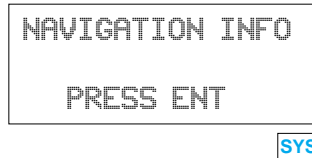
# SYS Mode Displays

## Top-Level Displays

Top-Level functions are accessed by entering SYS Mode and turning the **Large** knob. These functions are: Navigation Info, System Info, Position Sensors, and Miscellaneous Sensors. Pressing **ENT** places the system in the sub-state described on the top line. For example, pressing **ENT** when the top-level page reading “NAVIGATION INFO” (top line) and “PRESS ENT” (bottom line) is displayed, places the system in the Navigation Info sub-state, and the knobs are then used to access displays pertaining to navigation data and settings.

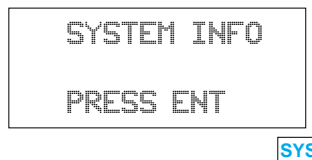
## Navigation Information

Pressing **ENT** when the screen below is displayed provides access to Airspace Setup, Autonav Time, NAV Mode Display Programming, Mag Variation (Magnetic Variation), the Flight Timer Trigger, and Direct-To Entry option.



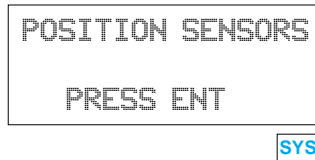
## System Information

Pressing **ENT** when the screen below is displayed provides access to Time and Date settings, Fuel Measure Units, Barometric Measure Units, Software Version information, Display Testing, and Owner Information.



## Position Sensors

Pressing **ENT** when the screen below is displayed provides access to Loran/GPS sensor settings and data.



## Miscellaneous Sensors

Pressing **ENT** when the screen below is displayed provides access to Air Data Info, Fuel Info data, and pressure altitude.



## Navigation Info Sub-State Displays

### Airspace Setup

The navigation information sub-state screens are used to display and edit various navigation settings. The display below is used to turn Airspace Alerts ON/OFF.



### Airspace Buffers

Airspace Alert provides alert messages based on distance, altitude, and time. The page below is used to set the airspace buffers. In this example, you will be alerted when the aircraft is 2 nm from a SUA (Special Use Airspace), within 500 feet of the floor/ceiling of a SUA, and are 10 minutes from penetrating a SUA. These settings are the default (factory) settings.

```

AIRSPACE BUFFERS
DIST ALT TIME
2NM 500' 10MIN

```

SYS

## Airspace Select

The display below is used to select the type of SUAs that will generate alert messages. A similar page is displayed for each type of SUA. SUA alert options include: Class B and C airspaces, MOAs, Training Areas, Unknown SUAs, Alert Areas, Caution Areas, Danger Areas, Restricted Areas, Prohibited Areas, and Warning Areas. When Class B OUTER or Class C OUTER is chosen, only one alert message is generated when multiple Class B or Class C airspaces overlap; i.e. the system considers the overlapping airspaces to be a single SUA.

```

AIRSPACE SELECT
CLASSB : OFF
B OUTER : ON

```

SYS

## Autonav Time

The display below is used to set the Autonav Scroll time. In this example, Autonav Scroll will display each Nav information page sequentially at 4 second intervals. When viewing the NAV mode home page, press **ENT** to activate Autonav Scroll. Press **ENT** again to stop scrolling.

```

AUTONAV TIME :
4 SECONDS/PAGE

```

SYS

## Navigation Info Sub-State Displays (continued)

### Nav Mode Display Programming

The display below is used to customize Nav pages. This feature allows you to choose the specific navigation items displayed in NAV mode.

```
NAV MODE DISPLAY
PROGRAMMABLE AND
AUTONAV PAGES
```

SYS

### Magnetic Variation

The display below shows the magnetic variation is set on automatic, and is currently 09°W (West). Magnetic variation information is drawn from the data card. The magnetic variation may also be entered manually, and *must* be entered manually if a valid data card is not inserted.

```
MAG VARIATION
AUTO 09°W
SEL TO EDIT
```

SYS

### Changing Oceanic Activation Altitude

The display below shows the Oceanic Activation Altitude currently set to 16000 feet. Activation altitude is adjustable in 100 foot increments over the range of 0 to 18000 feet.

```
OCEANIC ALTITUDE
16000 FT
SEL TO EDIT
```

SYS

### Flight Timer Trigger

The display below is used to adjust the Flight Timer Trigger speed. Flight Trigger choices are: OFF, At Power On, and selectable for speeds from 10 to 500 knots. In this example, the Flight Timer is activated when the ground speed exceeds 30 knots.

```
FLIGHT TIMER
TRIGGER
AT 30 KTS
```

SYS

### Direct-To Entry

The display below is used to choose the Direct-To Entry Option, which affects how entering a Direct-To waypoint is handled by the Active flight plan.

```
DIRECT-TO ENTRY
NEVER CLEARS
ACTIVE PLAN
```

SYS

### System Info Sub-State Displays

The system information Sub-State displays show information and settings pertaining to the NMS (Navigation Management System).

#### Date/Time (UTC)

The screen below is used to display and edit the current time/date. The NMC uses a 24 hour real-time clock to calculate ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival). Also, GPS sensors require the current UTC (Universal Coordinated Time—formally called Greenwich Mean Time) to locate satellites and determine position. In this example the current UTC is 15:14, and the date is February 11, 1999.

```
DATE: 11 FEB 99
TIME: 15:14 UTC
SEL TO RESET
```

SYS

### Fuel Measure Units

The screen below is used to choose the measurement units used in fuel data displays. The system must be interfaced with a F/ADS (Fuel/Air Data Sensor) or a fuel flow sensor to measure actual fuel flow. Estimated fuel data, which does not require an F/ADS or fuel flow sensor, may be displayed for inactive flight plans in FPL mode. Measurement units available include: US gallons, Imperial gallons, Liters, Pounds, and Kilos. In this example, fuel is measured in US Gallons.

```
FUEL MEASURE
USG
US GALLONS
```

SYS

## System Info Sub-State Displays (continued)

### Baro Measure Units

The screen below is used to choose the measurement units used in barometric pressure adjustment displays in inches or millibars.

```
BARO MEASURE
"
INCHES
```

SYS

### NMC Software Version

The display below shows the NMC software version and part number. The software version information may be important when servicing/troubleshooting the NMC. In this example, the NMC software version is 6.30 and part number is 139-0197-063. Turn the Small knob to display data base, Gateway/Keypad, GPS Sensor, Loran Sensor, and AirData Computer information.

```
APOLLO NMC
139-0197-063
```

SYS

### Data card Version

The display below shows the installed data card is North America, version 1.10. The expiration date for this version is March 31, 1999.

```
NORTH AMERICA DB
DATE: 03/31/99
VERSION: 1.11
```

SYS

### Gateway/Keypad Version

```
GATEWAY/KEYPAD
SW VERS 1.00
FW VERS 016
```

SYS



## System Info Sub-State Displays (continued)

### GPS Firmware Version

The display below shows the internal GPS Firmware (FW). The version shown is 016.

```
GPS : INT 'L VERS
FW VERS 016
```

SYS

### Loran Software Version

The display below shows the Loran 1 software version is 1.00, and the antenna is top mounted.

```
LORAN1
SW VERS 1.00
ANTENNA MT : TOP
```

SYS

### AirData Computer Version

This display shows the version of the AirData Computer.

```
AIRDATA COMPUTER
SW VERS 1.00.02
FW VERS 90.01.01
```

SYS

### Display Test

The screen below is used to test the NMC display.

```
TO TEST DISPLAY
PRESS ENT
```

SYS

### Owner Name

The display below shows the owner's name is Clark Kent. The NMC allows you to enter your name, address, phone number, and aircraft number into the NMC memory. This information is protected by an owner entered password.

```
OWNER NAME :
CLARK KENT
```

SYS

### Position Sensors Sub-State Displays

The position sensor screens display information about each Loran and GPS sensor included in the system.

#### Loran Information

The display below shows data for Loran 1, and a similar screen is displayed for each Loran sensor. Also, each Loran sensor tracks two GRIs, and turning the Large knob displays data for the other GRI. The top line in this example shows the position sensor is Loran number 1, and GRI number 1 is 9940. The middle line shows the GRI coverage name and the bottom line shows the grade and GRI selection process. “Auto” means the GRI selection process is automatic. “93” describes the grade (relative usefulness) of the signals (from 0 to 99). The higher the grade, the more useful the data.

```
LORAN1 GRI1 9940
US WEST COAST
GRADE 93 AUTO
```

SYS

#### No Data Available

If the NMC is not receiving data from Loran 1, the display below appears.

```
LORAN1 GRI1 -----
NO DATA
AVAILABLE
```

SYS

#### Master Station Information

The display below shows Master station signal information. A similar display appears for each GRI tracked by each Loran sensor. The top line displays the Loran sensor number, GRI number, and GRI identifier. The middle line shows the station and tracking status. In this example, the Master station tracking status is “cycle.” Tracking status may be either :

“srch” - the station is in search.

“cycle” - the station is in cycle selection, or has a cycle error.

“track” - the station has acquired the signal, has successfully cycle selected, and is tracking the signal.

The bottom line shows the SNR (Signal to Noise Ratio, from 0 to 99), the cycle data 1 (0 to 99), and the cycle data 2 (0 to 99). These numbers are a measure of the signal strength and accuracy. Cycle 1 data should be less than 50, and Cycle 2 data should be greater than 50. The greater the difference between the Cycle 1 value and the Cycle 2 value, the more accurate the position. The bottom line also shows the station secondary status. Secondary status is displayed as “Bnk” (blink), and/or “SNR” (Signal to Noise Ratio). Secondary station status is used to determine if the signal is useful. The station may not be used if it is in a blink (BNK) condition, or the SNR is too low. In this example, Loran 1 GRI1 is 9940. The Master station is in cycle, the SNR is 8, and the Cycle 1/2 data is 48/51. The Station shows a low SNR condition.

```
LORAN1 GRI1 9940
MASTER CYCLE
08 48/51 SNR
```

**SYS**

## Secondary Station Information

The display below shows the signal information for secondary station W (Whisky). A similar display appears for each secondary station tracked by each Loran sensor. The top line displays the Loran sensor number, GRI number, and GRI identifier. The middle line shows the station, TD (time difference), and tracking status. The bottom line shows the SNR, Cycle Data 1 and 2, and the secondary status. If the station is in search, the coding delay will be displayed in place of the TD. In the example below, the display shows Station W in GRI 9940 is being tracked, and has a TD of 12660.90. The SNR is 99, and the Cycle1/2 data is 14/86.

```
LORAN1 GRI1 9940
W 12660.90 TRACK
99 14/86
```

**SYS**

## Oscillator Information

The display below shows the OSC (Reference Oscillator) frequency and temperature. The OSC is used in timing the station TDs. In this example, the OSC frequency is 8.000101 MHz and is at 24°C.

```
LORAN1 GRI1 9940
OSC 8.00010MHz
TEMP 24°C
```

**SYS**

Each Loran sensor tracks two GRI's simultaneously, and can use stations from both GRIs to calculate a Latitude/Longitude position.

## Stations In Use

The display below shows multi-chain information, and whether manual or automatic triad selection is in use. The display also shows the stations used to calculate position, and whether the stations are selected manually or automatically.

```
LORAN1
9940 MNX AUTO
5990 MYZ AUTO
```

**SYS**

## GPS Status

The screen below displays information concerning a GPS (Global Positioning System) Sensor. The top line shows the GPS number and whether the position is 2D or 3D (2-Dimensional or 3-Dimensional). If the position is 2D, altitude is not calculated; if the position is 3D, the sensor is calculating both position and altitude. If "NO" is displayed, the system has not calculated a position. The middle line shows the number of healthy satellites in the GPS system. The bottom line shows the number of visible satellites. In this example, the GPS sensor has calculated a 2D position, with 22 healthy satellites and 8 satellites visible.

```
GPS 2D POSITION
HEALTHY SATS 22
VISIBLE SATS 8
```

**SYS**

## Satellites In Use

The next sub-page indicates the satellites that are presently being used to calculate your position. The selection of these satellites is a complex process that minimizes the error in calculating your position. The GPS satellites are always moving across the sky, so the ideal selection of satellites is constantly changing. The NMS GPS tracks up to 8 satellites simultaneously to insure fast and accurate transitions as these satellites move.

```
GPS SV'S FOR FIX
28,27,31,19
18,16,02
```

**SYS**

## Satellite Status

The display below shows the status, elevation, SNR, and Azimuth for each satellite. A similar display appears for each satellite a GPS sensor is tracking. In this example, satellite SV24 is in search status, with an elevation of 56°, an SNR of 38, and an azimuth of 173°. Elevation describes the position (in degrees) above the horizon. Azimuth refers to the horizontal position of the satellite in degrees, measured from true north.

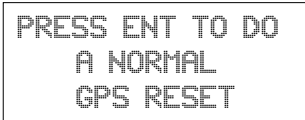
The SNR measurement is a relative value between 0 and 128. Status is a three step mnemonic, SRCH, TRCK or DATA defined by:

- SRCH: the receiver is searching for the satellite.
- TRCK: the receiver has locked to the satellite's data sequence.
- DATA: the receiver is locked and downloading data from the satellite.

```
SV24 STATUS DATA
ELE 56° SNR 038
AZIMUTH 173°
```

**SYS**

GPS time can also be obtained in UTC hours along with the date. Finally, the user can perform a normal reset. A normal reset sends the time, date and position to the GPS receiver. This will interrupt present navigation and restart satellite acquisition. This is the same sequence that is performed when the NMC is powered ON. This reset is provided but is NOT required for normal use.



```
PRESS ENT TO DO
A NORMAL
GPS RESET
```



### **Miscellaneous Sensors Sub-State Displays**

These displays pertain to systems that include miscellaneous sensors. The miscellaneous sensors are the F/ADS (Fuel/Air Data Sensor), Fuel Sensor, and/or encoding altimeter.

#### **Air Data Sensor Information**

If the system does not include a F/ADS, the next display is the only page shown for the Air Data Sensor information.



```
AIR DATA INFO
NO DATA
AVAILABLE
```



If the Air Data Sensor information is available, the next screens are available for information on the Air Data Sensor.

The first Air Data Sensor display shows:

True Air Speed, which is the speed the plane is traveling relative to the surrounding air speed

Indicated Air Speed, which is the speed of the plane as shown on the airspeed indicator

```
AIR DATA INFO
TRUEAIRSP 385KTS
INDAIRSP 423KTS+
```

SYS

The next display page shows:

True Air Temperature, which compensates for wind chill factors

Outside Air Temperature, which does not compensate for wind chill

Mach (in this case 0.405 mach)

```
TRUEAIR 24°C
OUTAIR ° 14°C
MACH .405
```

SYS

The next display shows:

Density Altitude

Pressure Altitude

Rate of Climb

```
DENS ALT 13155FT
PRES ALT 13300FT
ROC 160FT/MIN
```

SYS

The next Air Data Sensor display shows:

Magnetic Heading

Desired Heading

Turn Rate

```
MAG HEADING 347°
DESIRED HDC 321°
TURN 2°/SEC L
```

SYS

The last Air Data Sensor display shows:

- True Wind Direction
- Magnetic Wind Direction
- Wind Speed

```
WIND DIR 110° TRU
WIND DIR 110° MAG
WIND SPD 27KTS
```

SYS

## Fuel Data Sensor Information

If the system does not include an F/ADS, the next display is the only page shown for the Fuel Data Sensor Information.

```
FUEL INFO
NO DATA
AVAILABLE
```

SYS

If the Fuel Data Sensor information is available, the next screens are available for information on the Fuel Data Sensor.

The first Fuel Data Sensor display shows:

- Estimated Fuel Endurance, based on the current amount of fuel in the regular (non-reserve) tanks and the current burn rates
- Nautical Miles per Fuel Unit
- Remaining fuel, not including reserve tanks

```
ENDURANCE 01:34
NM PER USG 12.4
REMAIN 142USG
```

SYS



The next display shows:

- estimated Fuel Range, based on the current amount of fuel in the regular (non-reserve) tanks,
- current Burn Rate per hour
- total Fuel Used since power-up

```
RANGE 560NM
BURN 14.3USG/HR
USED 58USG
```

SYS

The next Fuel Data Sensor display shows:

- Burn Rate for the right engine
- Amount of Fuel Used by the right engine

```
RIGHT ENGINE
BURN 7.3USG/HR
USED 30USG
```

SYS

The next Fuel Data Sensor display shows:

- Burn Rate for the left engine
- Amount of Fuel Used by the left engine

```
RIGHT ENGINE
BURN 7.0USG/HR
USED 28USG
```

SYS

The next display shows:

- grand total of fuel which all tanks may hold
- amount of fuel which the reserve tanks may hold
- Fuel Warning Message time period before regular fuel tanks are empty

Each of these values may be edited by pressing **SEL**, rotating the **Large** and **Small** knobs, and pressing **ENT** to save any changes.

```
FULL 300USG
RESERV 30USG
MESSAGE AT 30MIN
```

SYS

The last Fuel Data Sensor display shows the current Fuel Measure Units which are displayed for fuel information. This information may be edited by pressing **SEL**, rotating the **Large** and **Small** knobs, and pressing **ENT** to save the changed value. The display page is also available in the System Info sub-state.

```
FUEL MEASURE
USG
US GALLONS
```

SYS

### Altitude Encoder Information

If the system does not include an altitude encoder, the next display is shown for the encoding altimeter information.

```
ENCODING
ALTIMETER
NO DATA AVAIL
```

SYS

If the encoding altimeter information is available, it will be shown as displayed below. This screen displays the pressure altitude being sent by the encoding altimeter, which is the current altitude without barometric pressure adjustment.

```
ENCODING
ALTIMETER
PRES ALT 1700FT
```

SYS

# Navigation Information Sub-State

The Navigation Information sub-state is used to modify the navigation information displays and settings. These settings include:

## Airspace Alert

Used to adjust the Altitude Buffers, the types of SUA (Special Use Airspace) areas you want to be alerted to, and the time/distance from SUAs at which you want alerts generated.

## Auto Nav Scroll Time

Used to choose the time each Nav information page is displayed during Auto Nav scroll.

## Programmable Nav Information Displays

Used to choose the specific navigation items displayed on the Nav information pages.

## Magnetic Variation

Used to choose auto or manual variation.

## Oceanic Altitude

Used to set the altitude where the NMC starts and stops the Oceanic flight phase.

## Flight Timer Trigger Speed

Used to adjust the ground speed at which the flight timer starts measuring elapsed time.

## Direct-To Entry Option

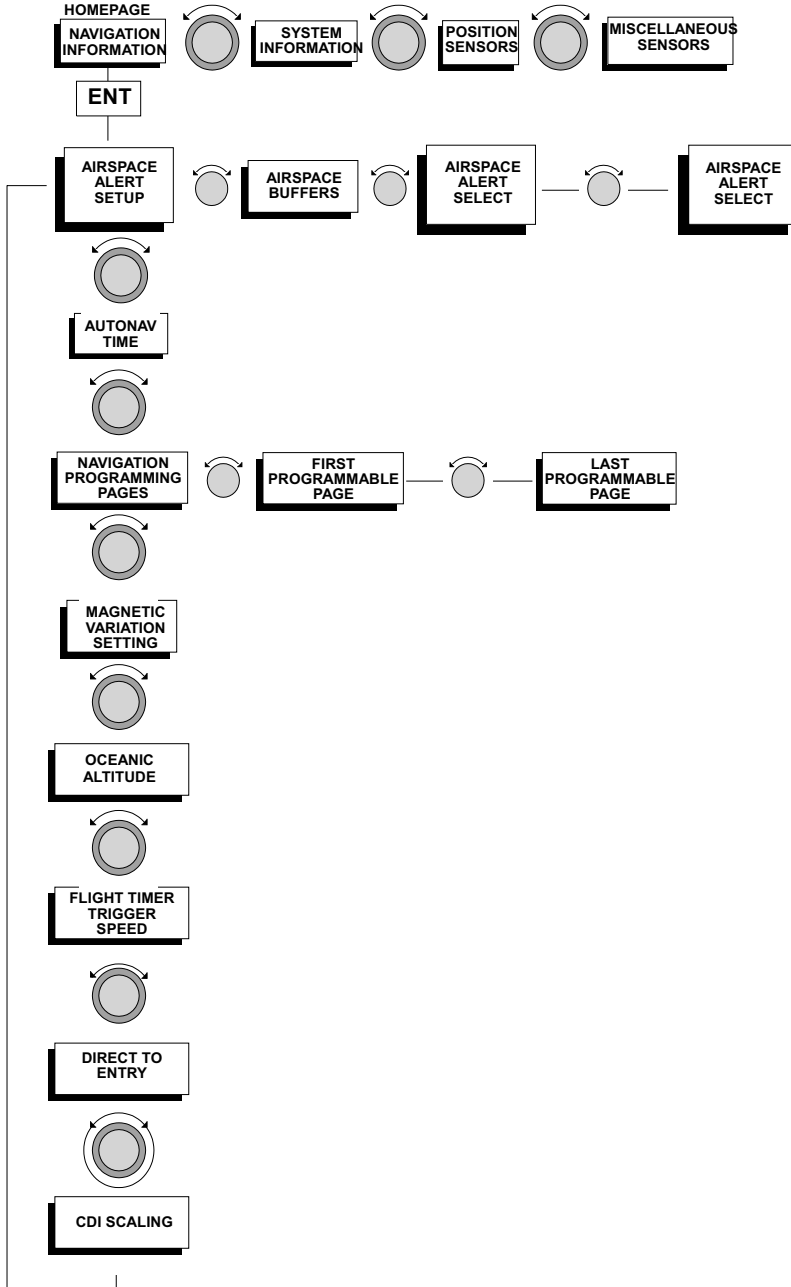
Used to choose how using Direct-To will affect the Active flight plan.

## CDI Scaling

Choose Automatic or Manual

### Navigation Information Sub-State (continued)

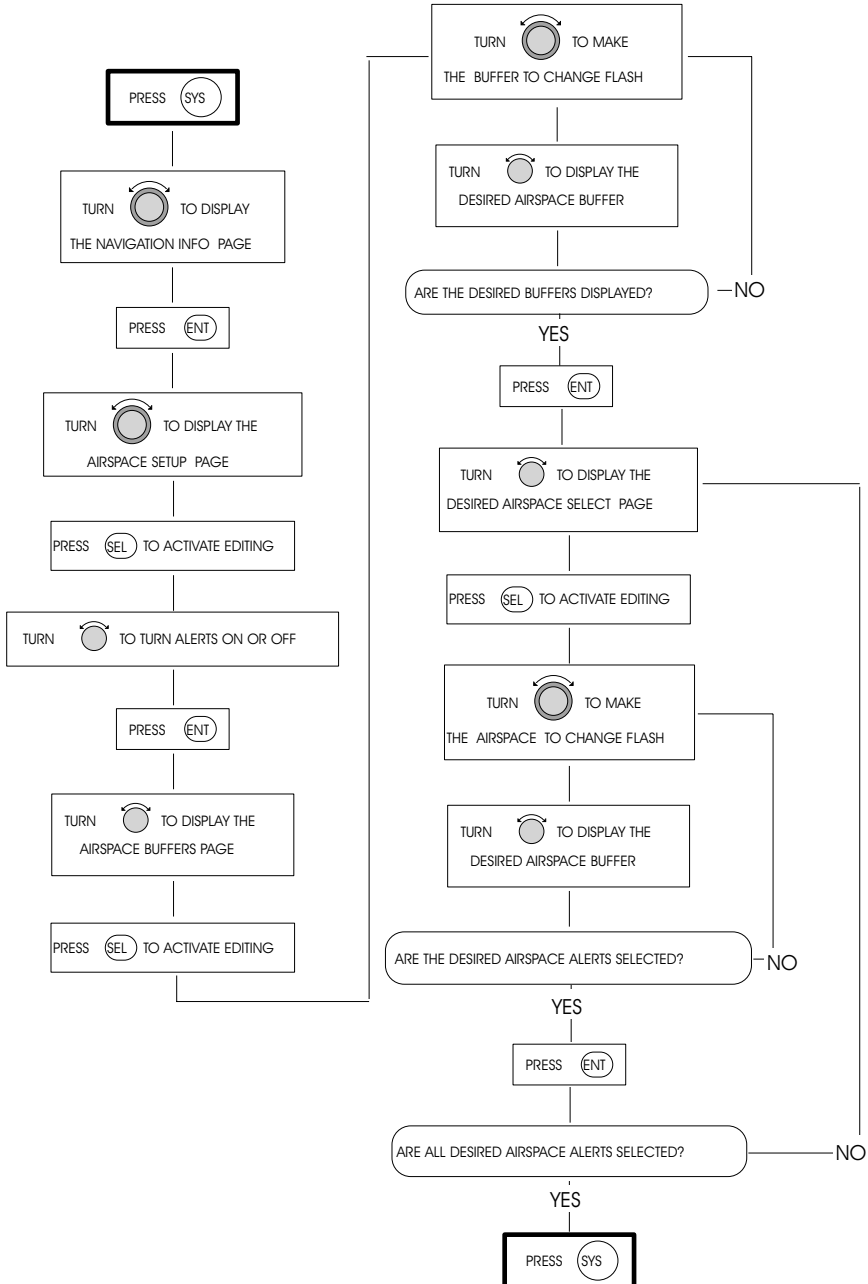
The figure below illustrates the organization of the Navigation Information sub-state.



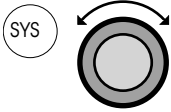
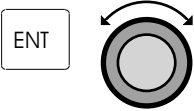

## Airspace Alert Settings

The following procedure is used to edit Airspace Alert settings.

### Flow Chart



### Airspace Alert Settings (continued)

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. </p>  | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">             NAVIGATION INFO<br/>             PRESS ENT         </div> <div style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; color: blue;">SYS</div>                                                                                                                            |
| <p>2. </p>  | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info Sub-State functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Airspace Setup page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">             AIRSPACE SETUP<br/>             ALERTS: ON ▾         </div> <div style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; color: blue;">SYS</div>                                                                 |
| <p>3. </p> | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing. Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display “ON” or “OFF.” Choosing “OFF” turns all airspace alert messages off. Press <b>ENT</b> to save the displayed setting.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">             AIRSPACE SETUP<br/>             ALERTS: ON ▾         </div> <div style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px; display: inline-block; color: blue;">SYS</div> |

## Airspace Alert Settings (continued)

4.



Turn the **Small** knob to display the Airspace Buffer page. DIST refers to the distance from SUAs. ALT refers to the Altitude Buffer. TIME refers to the time before penetrating SUAs.

```
AIRSPACE BUFFERS
DIST ALT TIME
2NM 500' 10MIN
```

SYS

5.

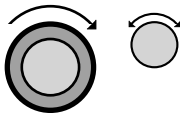


Pressing **SEL** activates editing. Turn the Small knob to display the desired distance setting.

```
AIRSPACE BUFFERS
DIST ALT TIME
5NM 500' 10MIN
```

SYS

6.



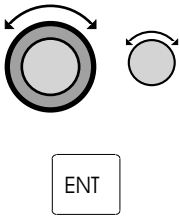
Turn the **Large** knob to make the altitude setting flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired altitude.

```
AIRSPACE BUFFERS
DIST ALT TIME
5NM 400' 10MIN
```

SYS

### Airspace Alert Settings (continued)

7. Repeat step 6.



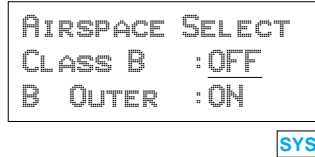
Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to edit the time setting. Pressing **ENT** save the changes.



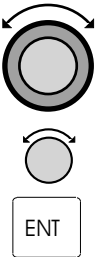
8.



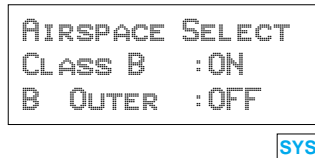
Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired Airspace Select page. Pressing **SEL** activates editing.



9.

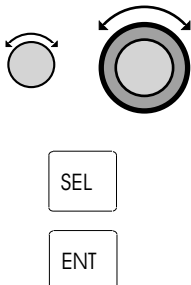


Turn the **Large** knob to make the setting you want to change flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired setting. Press **ENT** to save the changes.



10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 as required.






Use the **Small** and **Large** knobs and the **SEL** and **ENT** buttons to edit the remaining Airspace Select pages.





## Setting the Auto Nav Scroll Time

The following procedure is used to set the amount of time each NAV information page is displayed during Auto Nav Scroll. Each NAV information page may be displayed for up to 9 seconds.

- |    | <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                  | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. |                                                                                               | In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">NAVIGATION INFO<br/>PRESS ENT</div><br><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span>                                                          |
| 2. |                                                                                               | Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Autonav Time page.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">AUTONAV TIME<br/>4 SECONDS/PAGE</div><br><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span> |
| 3. |                                                                                             | Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">AUTONAV TIME<br/><u>4</u> SECONDS/PAGE</div><br><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span>                                                                                       |
| 4. | <br><br> | Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the desired time. Press <b>ENT</b> to save the setting.<br><br><div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">AUTONAV TIME<br/>6 SECONDS/PAGE</div><br><span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span>                                       |

## Programmable and Autonav Nav Pages

The NMC allows you to customize the Nav Information pages to display your personal choice of Nav Items on each of the programmable pages (see *Eight Character Nav Items* and *Sixteen Character Nav Items* in the *Nav* section starting on page 70). The programmable Nav Information pages include each of the Navigation Sub-Displays except the first one, which displays ETE, CDI, Bearing, and Remaining Distance to the current “To” waypoint. You may also decide which of the Nav Information pages will be displayed when the Autonav feature is being used.

The Navigation Info display is divided into six fields of eight characters each.

|         |         |
|---------|---------|
| FIELD 1 | FIELD 2 |
| FIELD 3 | FIELD 4 |
| FIELD 5 | FIELD 6 |

The Eight Character Nav Items will fit into any of fields 1 through 6. The Sixteen Character Nav Items span two fields, and must start in fields 1, 3, or 5.

### Action

1.

### Explanation

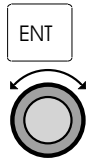
In SYS mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Navigation Info page.

|                 |
|-----------------|
| NAVIGATION INFO |
| PRESS ENT       |

**SYS**

## Programmable and Autonav Nav Pages (continued)

2.



Pressing **ENT** activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Nav Mode Display Programming page.

```
NAV MODE DISPLAY
PROGRAMMABLE AND
AUTONAV PAGES
```

SYS

3.



Turning the **Small** knob displays the Navigation Info pages, and pressing **SEL** activates editing.



The first Navigation Info page is not programmable. Pressing **SEL** when the first Navigation Info page is displayed causes the next screen to be displayed. If this page is displayed, skip to step 5, or press **SEL** again to cancel.



```
SELECTED PAGE IS
NOT PROGRAMMABLE
EDIT AUTONAV?
```



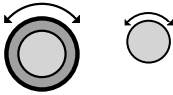
Pressing **SEL** when any of the other Navigation Info pages are displayed starts the editor for updating the Nav Items.

```
ETE SLE 00:32
2.00 , , †
DTK 084 87NM
```

SYS

**Programmable and Autonav Nav Pages (continued)**

4.



Rotating the **Large** and **Small** knobs moves the cursor and updates the displayed fields.

```
ETE SLE 00:32
ETA SLE 20:59
DTK 084 87NM
```

**SYS**

5.



Pressing **ENT** saves any updates, and displays the Autonav Pages prompt.

```
NAV PAGE 2 IN
AUTONAV PAGES?
 YES
```

**SYS**

6.



Turning the **Small** knob displays the available choices you have for keeping this page in the Autonav sequence.

```
NAV PAGE 2 IN
AUTONAV PAGES?
 NO
```

**SYS**

7.



Pressing **ENT** saves the Autonav choice and displays the Navigation Info page with the updated fields.

```
ETE SLE 00:32
ETA SLE 20:59
DTK 084 87NM
```

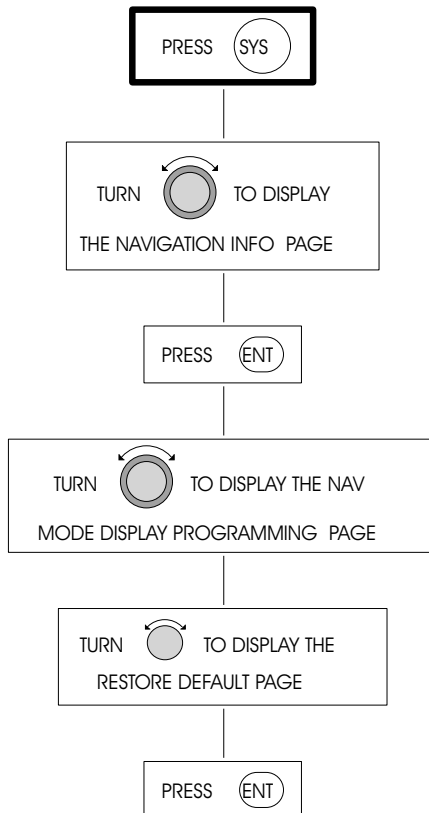
**SYS**

## Programmable and Autonav Nav Pages (continued)

One of the optional fields which may be programmed into the customizable Navigation Info pages is the Empty field. This is an eight character field, and is denoted by six flashing underscore characters (“\_\_\_\_\_”) when the cursor is on the field. Moving the cursor off of the Empty field causes the underscores to disappear, leaving the eight characters blank. By programming a Navigation Info page to be completely blank, the page will not appear in the Navigation Info pages of NAV mode, nor will the page appear in the Autonav sequence.

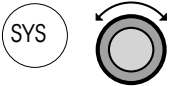
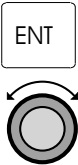


You now have maximum control over the Navigation Info pages for satisfying your individual requirements. You now have the capability of customizing the Navigation Info pages to:

- display only desired fields (see pages 70 through 76)
- remove pages
- customize which pages are displayed in the Autonav sequence



### Restoring Default Nav Displays

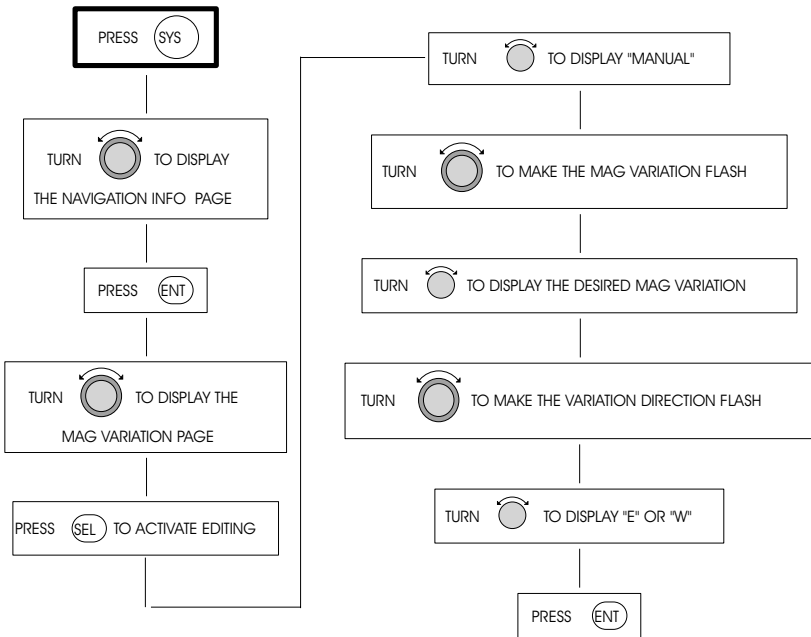
The following procedure is used to restore the default (factory) Nav displays.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. </p>   | <p>In <b>SYS</b> mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             NAVIGATION INFO<br/>PRESS ENT         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><b>SYS</b></div>                                                                                                        |
| <p>2. </p>   | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info Sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the NAV Mode Display Programmable and Autonav page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             NAV MODE DISPLAY<br/>PROGRAMMABLE AND<br/>AUTONAV PAGES         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><b>SYS</b></div> |
| <p>3. </p> | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the Restore Default Nav Pages screen.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             PRESS ENT TO<br/>RESTORE DEFAULT<br/>NAV PAGES         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><b>SYS</b></div>                                                                                               |
| <p>4. </p> | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> restores the default Nav displays, and displays the next page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             NAV MODE DISPLAY<br/>PROGRAMMABLE AND<br/>AUTONAV PAGES         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><b>SYS</b></div>                                                                               |

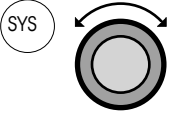
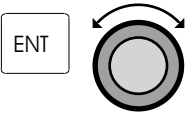


## Manually Entering Magnetic Variation

The following procedure is used to edit the magnetic variation anytime after the power-up sequence is complete. With a datacard installed, and magnetic variation set to AUTO, the NMC automatically accounts for magnetic variation. If the datacard is not inserted, you *must* enter the magnetic variation during power-up. For the procedure used to enter magnetic variation during power-up, see Operations, *Power-Up Sequence*.

### Flow chart



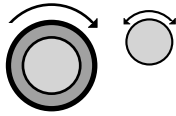
## Manually Entering Magnetic Variation (continued)

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p>    | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">             NAVIGATION INFO<br/>             PRESS ENT         </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p>                                                                                                |
| <p>2.</p>    | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Mag Variation page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">             MAG VARIATION<br/>             AUTO            09° W<br/>             SEL TO EDIT         </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p> |
| <p>3.</p>    | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">             MAG VARIATION<br/> <u>A</u>UTO            09° W         </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p>                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>4.</p>  | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display “Manual.”</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;">             MAG VARIATION<br/> <u>M</u>ANUAL            09° W         </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p>                                                                                                                      |



## Manually Entering Magnetic Variation (continued)

5.

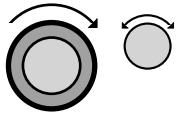


Turn the **Large** knob to make the Mag Variation value flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired Mag Variation.

```
MAG VARIATION
MANUAL 15°W
```

SYS

6.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the direction character flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display “E” (East) or “W” (West). Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed Mag Variation.

ENT

```
MAG VARIATION
AUTO 15°W
SEL TO EDIT
```

SYS

7.

ENT

Pressing **ENT** saves the magnetic variation setting.

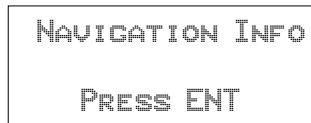
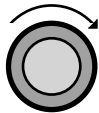
```
MAG VARIATION
MANUAL 15°W
SEL TO EDIT
```

SYS

## Changing the Oceanic Activation Altitude

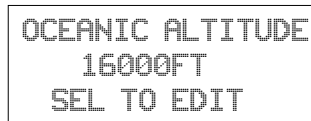
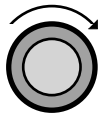
The following procedure is used to set the altitude at which the NMC will start and stop the Oceanic/Remote Flight Phase. The default (factory) setting is 18000 feet. Acceptable settings are from 0 to 18000 feet in 100 foot increments.

1. In SYS mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Navigation Info page.



**SYS**

2. Press **ENT** to activate the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Oceanic Altitude page.



**SYS**

3. Press **SEL** to activate editing.

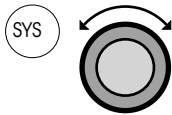


4. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired activation altitude. The altitude is changed in 100 foot increments. Press **ENT** to save the setting.



## Editing the Flight Timer Trigger Speed

The following procedure is used to edit the flight timer trigger speed. The flight timer may be set to start at power-up, or when the ground speed exceeds from 10 to 500 knots. The default (factory) setting is 60 knots. The feature may also be turned off.

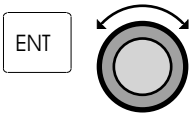
1.  In **SYS** mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Navigation Info page.

```

NAVIGATION INFO
PRESS ENT

```

**SYS**

2.  Pressing **ENT** activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Flight Timer Trigger page.

```

FLIGHT TIMER
TRIGGER
AT 60 KTS

```

**SYS**

3. Pressing **SEL** activates editing.

**SEL**

```

FLIGHT TIMER
TRIGGER
AT 60 KTS

```

**SYS**

4. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired trigger speed. The trigger speed is chosen in increments of 10 kts. OFF or AT POWER-ON may also be chosen. Press **ENT** to save the setting.

 **ENT**

```

FLIGHT TIMER
TRIGGER
AT 40 KTS

```

**SYS**

## Display Units

Nav displays that show distance may be selected to show either nautical miles, statute miles, or kilometers. Altitude displays may show either meters (m) or feet (ft). These selections are made in the Nav Info section of the System mode.

1. In the Navigation Info section of the System function, turn the **Large** knob to the Display Units Page.

```
DISPLAY UNITS
DISTANCE : NM/KTS
ALTITUDE : FT
```

2. Press **SEL** to activate selection. The Distance value will flash. Turn the **Small** knob to change the value.

```
DISPLAY UNITS
DISTANCE : NM/KTS
ALTITUDE : FT
```

3. Turn the **Large** knob to move to the Altitude selection. Turn the **Small** knob to change the value.

```
DISPLAY UNITS
DISTANCE : SM/MPH
ALTITUDE : FT
```

4. After completing your selections, press **ENT** to save the values.

## Description of the Direct-To Entry Option

When you use Direct-To, the Active flight plan (and the From, To, Next information) is automatically updated.

If you use Direct-To to center the CDI needle for the current “To” waypoint, or skip past the To waypoint to another waypoint already in the Active flight plan, the current leg number of the Active flight plan will be updated, if needed, so that the Direct-To waypoint matches the current “To” waypoint. In these cases, the Direct-To Entry Option is not a factor.

The Direct-To Entry Option becomes a factor if you go Direct-To a waypoint which is *not* in the Active flight plan.

With the **May Clear** Direct-To Entry Option, the Direct-To waypoint will be inserted in the Active flight plan, *and all of the other waypoints will be deleted from the Active flight plan.*

With the **Never Clears** Direct-To option, the Direct-To waypoint is *inserted before the current To waypoint.*

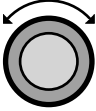
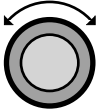

The **May Clear** option is useful for the pilot who uses the Direct-To function for the majority of flight planning, and doesn’t want to be bothered with a steadily increasing number of waypoints in the Active flight plan. The **Never Clears** option is useful when you need to vector off from the Active flight plan’s path temporarily, resuming the previously entered flight plan at a later time.

When you first buy the NMC, the **Never Clears** Direct-To Entry option is set. The NMC retains the last Direct-To Entry Option setting when it is powered up.

You may select which option to use in System Mode, as described next.

## Editing the Direct-To Entry Option


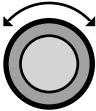

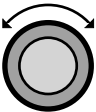
The following procedure is used to edit the Direct-To Entry Option.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p>                                                                                                                            | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             NAVIGATION INFO<br/>             PRESS ENT         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span> </div>                                                                                                  |
| <p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             ENT         </div>    | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Direct-To Entry Option page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             DIRECT-TO ENTRY<br/>             NEVER CLEARS<br/>             ACTIVE PLAN         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span> </div> |
| <p>3.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             SEL         </div>                                                                                     | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             DIRECT-TO ENTRY<br/>             NEVER CLEARS<br/>             ACTIVE PLAN         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span> </div>                                                                                                        |
| <p>4.</p>  <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             ENT         </div> | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the desired Direct-To Entry Option. Press <b>ENT</b> to save the option.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             DIRECT-TO ENTRY<br/>             NEVER CLEARS<br/>             ACTIVE PLAN         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"> <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">SYS</span> </div>                                |





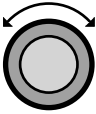



## CDI Scaling

The CDI Scaling option allows you to choose between Automatic and Manual Scaling. If Auto CDI Scaling is on, CDI scaling will be 5.00 nm full scale per side. The manual CDI scaling may be set to 0.3, 1.0, or 5.0 nm full scale per side. In an active approach operation, CDI scaling is locked in automatic and will change according to your distance to the destination waypoint for the approach operation flight phase.

The following procedure is used to edit the Auto CDI Scaling Option.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                  | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.  </p>  | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           NAVIGATION INFO<br/>PRESS ENT         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</span></div>                                                                           |
| <p>2.  </p> | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info Sub-State functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the CDI Scaling Option page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           CDI SCALING<br/>AUTOMATIC<br/>===== 5.00NM         </div> <div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</span></div> |

### Editing the Auto CDI Scaling Option (continued)

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3.</p>    | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing. The active selection will flash.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             CDI SCALING<br/>             AUTOMATIC<br/>             5.00NM         </div>                                                                           |
| <p>4.</p>    | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to Automatic or Manual scaling. Press <b>ENT</b> to save your choice.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             CDI SCALING<br/>             MANUAL<br/>                   5.00NM         </div>                                               |
| <p>5.</p>   | <p>Change the manual resolution while “MANUAL” is flashing. Turn the <b>Large</b>, outer knob. The sensitivity value will flash.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             CDI SCALING<br/>             MANUAL<br/>                   5.00NM         </div>                |
| <p>6.</p>  | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b>, inner knob to select 0.30, 1.00, or 5.00 nm full scale deflection per side. Press <b>ENT</b> to save your choice.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">             CDI SCALING<br/>             AUTOMATIC<br/>                   0.30NM         </div>  |



## System Information Sub-State

The System Information sub-state is used to display and modify information pertaining to the Apollo NMS. This information includes:

### **Time and Date**

Used to display/edit the UTC (Universal Coordinated Time-formerly called Greenwich Mean Time) time and date. The current time is based on a 24 hour clock.

### **Fuel Measure Units**

Used to choose the units used to display fuel information.

### **Baro Measure Units**

Used to choose inches or millibars for air pressure display.

### **Software Versions**

Used to display the software version and database for the NMC, and each sensor.

### **Display Testing**

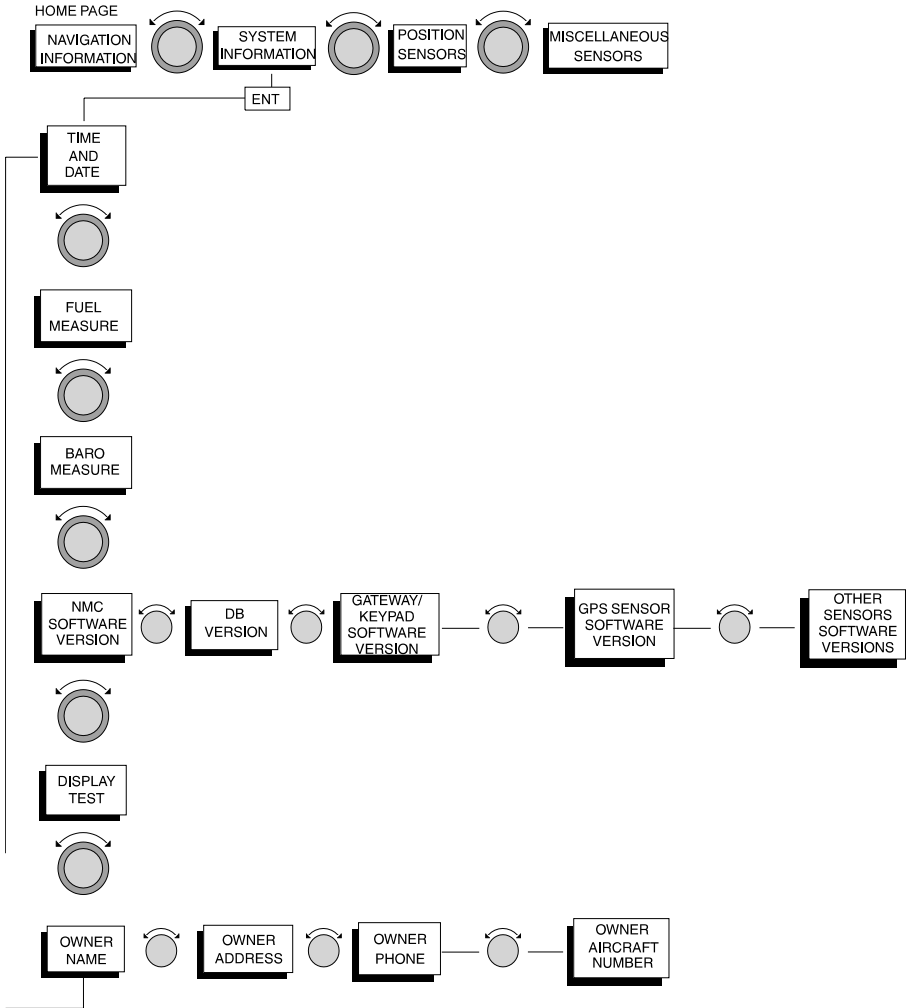
Used to test each LED in the display.

### **Owner Information**

Used to enter/edit the owner's name, address, phone number, and aircraft number. This information is protected by a owner entered password.

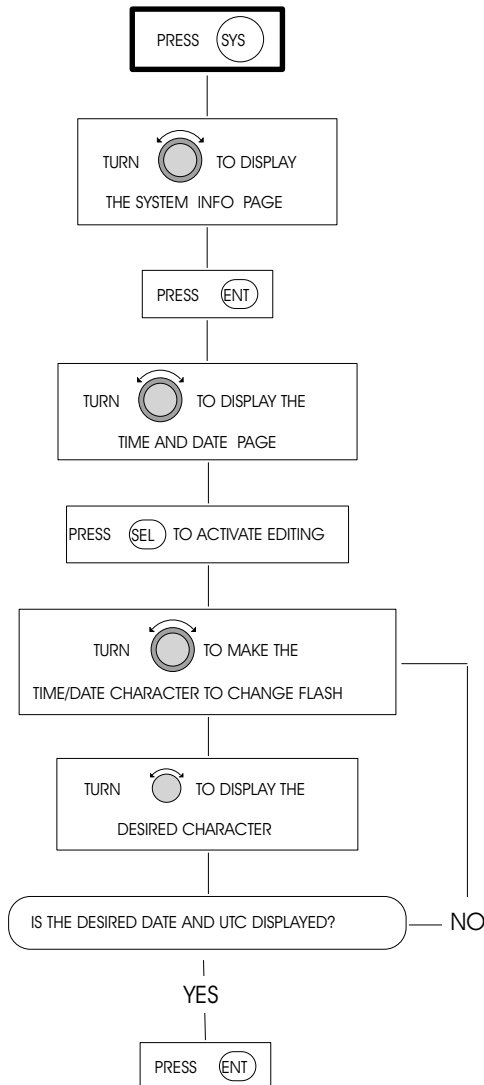
### System Information Sub-State (continued)

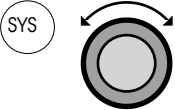
The figure below illustrates the organization of the Sys Info sub-state.



## Setting the Time and Date

The following procedure is used to enter the time and date. The NMC uses a real time clock set to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC—formerly called Greenwich Mean Time). The correct UTC must be entered for GPS sensors to initialize. During the power-up sequence, the NMC briefly displays the current time and date. The time and date may also be adjusted during the power-up sequence. The NMC will update itself from GPS satellite data during power-up after it gets a 3-D fix. For the procedure used to adjust the time and date during power-up, see Operations, *Power-Up Sequence*.



1.  In **SYS** mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the System Info page.

2.  Pressing **ENT** activates the System Info sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Time/Date page.

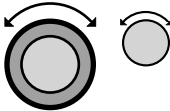
```
DATE: 01 APR 99
TIME: 13:16 UTC
SEL TO RESET
```

SYS

3.  Pressing **SEL** activates editing. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired date.

```
DATE: 21 APR 99
TIME: 13:16 UTC
```

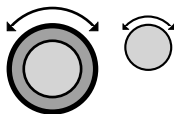
SYS

4.  Turn the **Large** knob to make the next item you want to change flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired item.

```
DATE: 21 FEB 99
TIME: 13:16 UTC
```

SYS

5. Repeat step 4. Use the **Large** and **Small** knob to edit the items. Pressing **ENT** saves the changes. Pressing **SEL** exits editing without saving any changes.



ENT

SEL

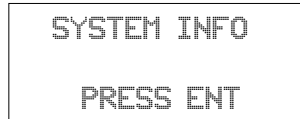
```
DATE: 21 FEB 99
TIME: 14:18 UTC
SEL TO RESET
```

SYS

## Choosing the Fuel Measure Units

The following procedure is used to choose the fuel measure units that appear in fuel displays. Fuel may be measured in US Gallons (USG), Imperial Gallons (IMG), Liters (L), Pounds (LBS), or Kilos (KGS).

1. In SYS mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the System Info page.



A rectangular box containing the text "SYSTEM INFO" on the top line and "PRESS ENT" on the bottom line.

**SYS**

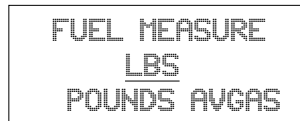
2. Pressing **ENT** activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Fuel Measure page.



A rectangular box containing the text "FUEL MEASURE" on the top line, "USG" on the second line, and "US GALLONS" on the bottom line.

**SYS**

3. Pressing **SEL** activates editing. Turn the **Small** knob to choose the desired fuel measure units.



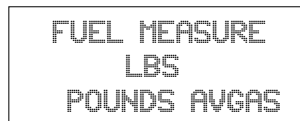
A rectangular box containing the text "FUEL MEASURE" on the top line, "LBS" on the second line (underlined), and "POUNDS AVGAS" on the bottom line.

**SYS**

4. Press **ENT** to save the selection.



A rectangular button with the text "ENT" inside.

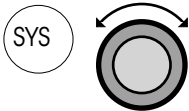
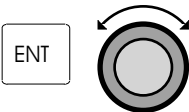




A rectangular box containing the text "FUEL MEASURE" on the top line, "LBS" on the second line, and "POUNDS AVGAS" on the bottom line.

**SYS**

## Choosing the Barometric Pressure Units

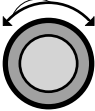
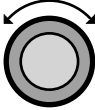

The following procedure is used to choose the barometric pressure units that appear in the Local Altimeter Setting page in Nav mode.

- |    | <u>Action</u>                                                                       | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. |    | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Navigation Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           SYSTEM INFO<br/>PRESS ENT         </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</div>                                                                         |
| 2. |    | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Barometric Pressure Units page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           BARO MEASURE<br/>"<br/>INCHES         </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</div> |
| 3. |   | <p>Pressing <b>SEL</b> activates editing.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           BARO MEASURE<br/>"<br/>—<br/>INCHES         </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</div>                                                                                                     |
| 4. |  | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to display the desired Direct-To Entry Option. Press <b>ENT</b> to save the option.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;">           BARO MEASURE<br/>MB<br/>MILLIBARS         </div> <div style="text-align: right; font-size: small; color: blue; border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</div>                               |



## Displaying Software and Database Versions

The following procedure is used to display the software and database version numbers. If you call your dealer or the factory concerning a problem, it may be helpful if you have these numbers available.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                                                                                                                        | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p>                                                                                                           | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the System Info page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">SYSTEM INFO</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PRESS ENT</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</span></p>                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>2.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-right: 20px;">ENT</div>  | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Navigation Info sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Apollo NMC Software Version page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">APOLLO NMC</p> <p style="text-align: center;">139-0197-030</p> <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 10px;">◆</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</span></p> |
| <p>3.</p>                                                                                                         | <p>Turn the <b>Small</b> knob to scroll through the displays showing version information for the various system components.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">WEST NORTH AM DB</p> <p style="text-align: center;">DATE: 03/31/99</p> <p style="text-align: center;">VERSION: 1.11</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;"><span style="border: 1px solid blue; padding: 2px;">SYS</span></p>                          |



## Entering and Editing Owner Information

The NMC allows you to input your name, address, phone number, and aircraft ID number. The owner name is displayed each time the NMC is powered up. This is designed to discourage theft. The information entered may not be changed without the proper six letter password, also entered by the owner. Entry of this information is optional, but highly recommended. The password may not be changed once it is entered.

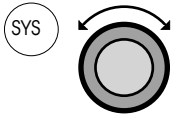
### Caution

*To change the owner information, you must remember your password. The password can only be cleared by II Morrow technicians.*

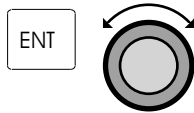
### Action

### Explanation

1.



In **SYS** mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the System Info page and press **ENT** to activate the System Info functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Owner Name page.



```
OWNER NAME :
SEL TO EDIT
```

**SYS**

2.



Pressing **SEL** activates editing. The display below appears for approximately 3 seconds. Turn the **Small** knob to display the first character in the password.

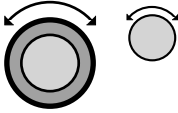
```
USER MUST FIRST
ENTER PASSWORD
```

**SYS**

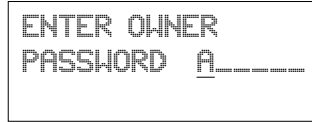
```
ENTER OWNER
PASSWORD T_-----
```

**SYS**

4.

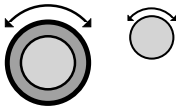


Turn the **Large** knob to make the next character space flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired character.

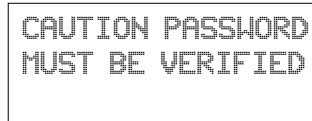


SYS

5. Repeat step 4.

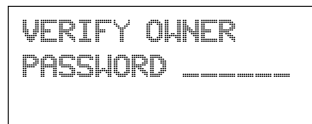


Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to choose the remaining characters in the password. Characters chosen are not displayed when another character space is flashing. To review the characters, turn the **Large** knob. Press **ENT** to enter the password. The display below appears for approximately 3 seconds.



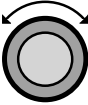

SYS

After 3 seconds the display below appears.




SYS

## Entering and Editing Owner Information (continued)

6.   Use **Large** and **Small** knobs to confirm (re-enter) your password, as shown the step 4.

```
VERIFY OWNER
PASSWORD _____N
```

SYS

7.  Pressing **ENT** saves the password. If a mistake is made, the NMC “asks” you to try again. The following display appears for approximately 3 seconds.



```
PASSWORD MATCHED
EDITING ENABLED
```

SYS

After 3 seconds, the display below appears.

```
OWNER NAME :
SEL TO EDIT ◆
```

SYS

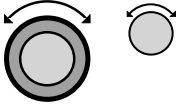
8.   Pressing **SEL** enables editing. Turn the **Small** knob to display the first character in the owner name.

```
OWNER NAME :
A
```

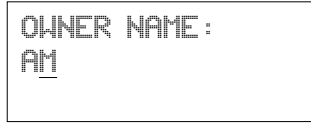
SYS

### Entering and Editing Owner Information (continued)

9.

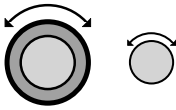


Turn the **Large** knob to make the next character space flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired characters.



SYS

10. Repeat step 9.



Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to display the remaining characters in the owner name. Press **ENT** to save the name.

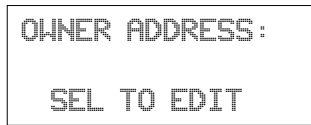


SYS

11.

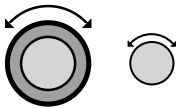


Turn the **Small** knob to display the next Owner Information page.

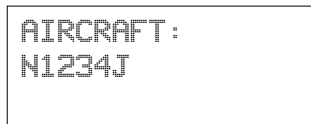


SYS

12. Repeat steps 8 through 11.



Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs and the **ENT** button to edit the remaining Owner Info pages. Once the password has been verified, Owner Info displays may be edited without entering the password until the NMC is powered off.

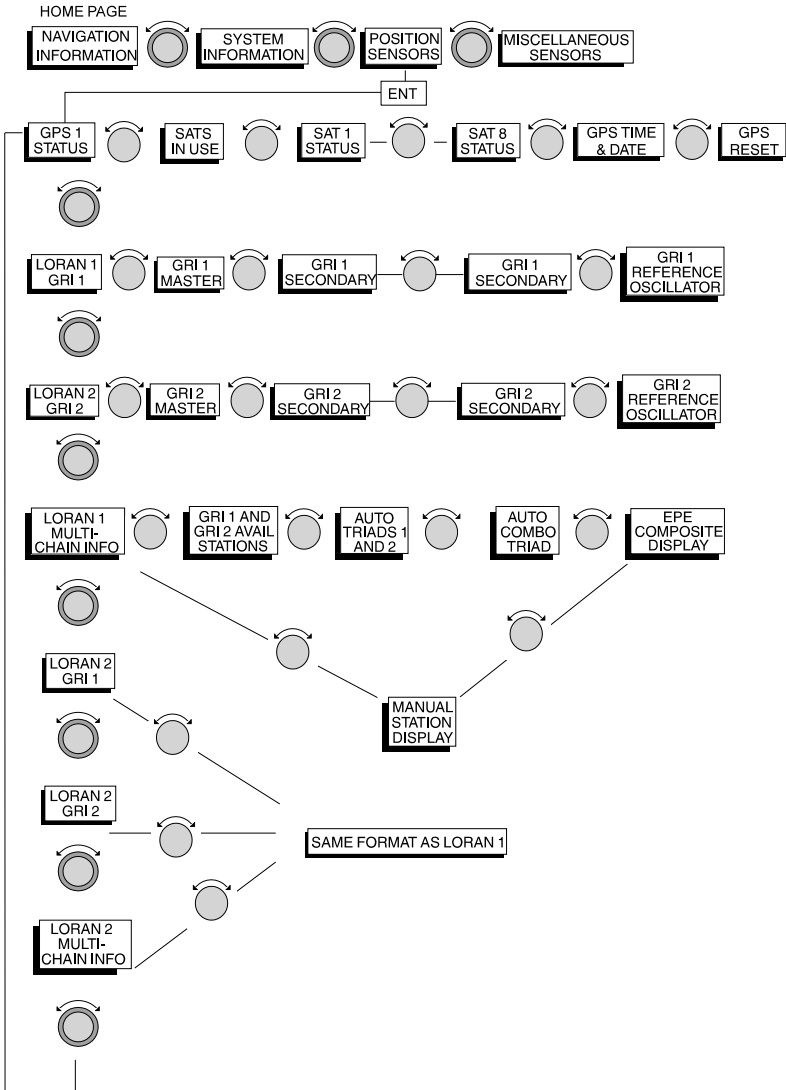


SYS

## Position Sensor Sub-State

The Position Sensor sub-state is used to display and modify position sensor settings. If Loran sensor(s) are installed, this information includes: TDs (Time Differences), OSC (Reference Oscillator) frequency and temperature, GRI's, and Triads.

If GPS sensor(s) are installed, this information includes: the number of healthy satellites, the number of visible satellites, present altitude, track, ground speed, identifiers of the satellites used, the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), satellite status, satellite elevation, SNR (Signal to Noise Ratio), and Azimuth.



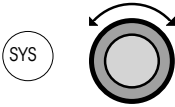
# Loran Sensor Sub-State

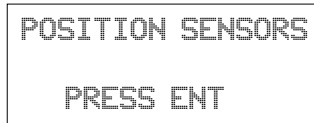
The Position Sensor sub-state is used to display and modify position sensor settings. If Loran sensor(s) are installed, this information includes: TDs (Time Differences), OSC (Reference Oscillator) frequency and temperature, GRI's, and Triads.

If GPS sensor(s) are installed, this information includes: the number of healthy satellites, the number of visible satellites, present altitude, track, ground speed, identifiers of the satellites used, the UTC (Coordinated Universal Time), satellite status, satellite elevation, SNR (Signal to Noise Ratio), and Azimuth.

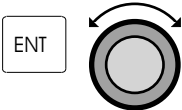
## Displaying Position Sensor Information

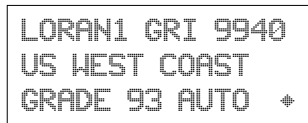
The following procedure is used to display position sensor data.

1.  In SYS mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Position Sensors page.




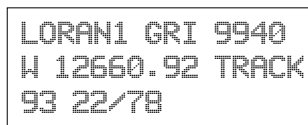
**SYS**

2.  Pressing **ENT** activates the Position Sensor sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the desired Loran GRI page.



**SYS**

3.  Turn the **Small** knob to display station data.

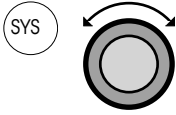


**SYS**

## Manual GRI Selection

The following procedure is used to manually choose GRI's. Triads may still be automatically selected with manually selected GRIs.

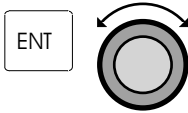
1. In SYS mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Position Sensors page.



```
POSITION SENSORS
PRESS ENT
```

**SYS**

2. Pressing **ENT** activates the Position Sensor sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the desired Loran GRI page.



```
LORAN1 GRI 9940
US WEST COAST
GRADE 93 AUTO +
```

**SYS**

3. Pressing **SEL** activates editing.



```
LORAN1 GRI 9940
US WEST COAST
GRADE 93 AUTO
```

**SYS**

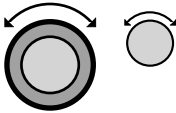
4. Turn the **Small** knob to choose MANUAL.



```
LORAN1 GRI 9940
US WEST COAST
GRADE 93 MANUAL
```

**SYS**

5.



Turn the **Large** knob to make the GRI name flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired GRI.

```
LORAN1 GRI 9970
NW PACIFIC
GRADE 00 MANUAL
```

SYS

6.



Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed GRI. Pressing any mode button exits this function without entering any changes.

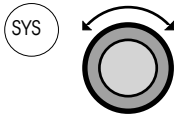
```
LORAN1 GRI 9970
NW PACIFIC
GRADE 00 MANUAL
```

SYS

### Manual Triad Selection

The following procedure is used to manually select the Loran triad. Prior to using this procedure, you *must* manually select the GRI(s). Only one triad may be manually selected for each Loran sensor.

1.

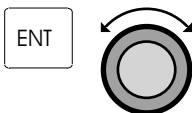


In **SYS** mode, turn the **Large** knob to display the Position Sensor page.

```
POSITION SENSORS
PRESS ENT
```

SYS

2.



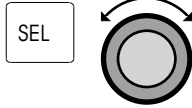
Pressing **ENT** activates the Position Sensor sub-state functions. Turn the **Large** knob to display the Loran Stations page.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990 M XYZ AUTO
9940 MXY AUTO
```

SYS



3.



Pressing **SEL** activates editing. Turn the **Large** knob to make AUTO flash by the desired GRI.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990 M XYZ AUTO
9940 MW Y AUTO
```

SYS

4.

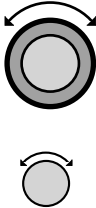


Turn the **Small** knob to choose MANUAL. The Stations for the other GRI are no longer displayed.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990
9940 MWX MANUAL
```

SYS

5.

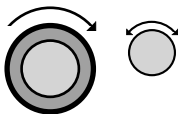


Turn the **Large** knob to make the first station designator flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired station.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990
9940 M MANUAL
```

SYS

6.



**Turn the Large** knob to make the next station designator flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired station. Repeat to choose the remaining station.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990
9940 MXY_ MANUAL
```

SYS

7.

ENT

SEL

**Press ENT** to enter the triad. Pressing any Mode button or the **SEL** button instead exits editing without saving the changes.

```
LORAN1 STATIONS:
5990 MXYZ AUTO
9940 MXY MANUAL
```

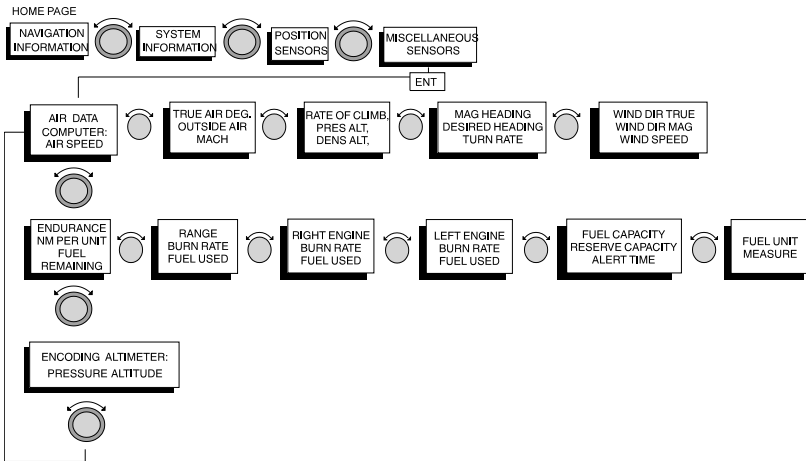
SYS

# Miscellaneous Sensor Sub-State

The Miscellaneous Sensor Sub-State is used to display information concerning the F/ADS (Fuel/Air Data Sensor), fuel sensor, and altitude encoder. The F/ADS, which includes a fuel sensor and altitude encoder, monitors fuel flow, air speed, outside air temperature/pressure, and magnetic heading. The F/ADS data is used to compute TAS, pressure altitude, density altitude, heading, wind direction/velocity, rate of climb, and fuel usage.

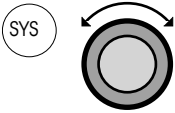
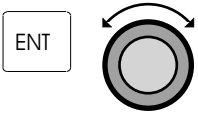

## Miscellaneous Sensor Sub-State

The figure below illustrates the organization of the SYS Mode Miscellaneous Sensors Sub-State.



## Displaying Miscellaneous Sensor Information

The following procedure is used to display miscellaneous sensor information.

- | <u>Action</u>                                                                                 | <u>Explanation</u>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1.</p>    | <p>In SYS mode, turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Misc Sensors page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>MISC SENSORS</p> <p>PRESS ENT</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p>                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <p>2.</p>    | <p>Pressing <b>ENT</b> activates the Miscellaneous Sensor sub-state functions. Turn the <b>Large</b> knob to display the Air Data Sensor top page, the Fuel Data Sensor top page, or the altitude encoder page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>AIR DATA INFO</p> <p>TRUAIRSP 385KTS</p> <p>INDAIRSP 304KTS</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p> |
| <p>3.</p>  | <p>If the diamond character is displayed on the lower right hand corner of the display page, rotate the <b>Small</b> knob to view sub-pages of the current page.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>TRUEAIR     24°C</p> <p>OUTAIR     14°C</p> <p>TURN     3°/Sec L</p> </div> <p style="text-align: right; color: blue; font-weight: bold;">SYS</p>                                           |

# General Approach Overview

## Apollo NMS Approaches

The Apollo NMS may be used to navigate GPS non-precision approaches. These consist of overlay approaches, GPS approaches which overlay an existing non-precision approach procedure such as a VOR, an RNAV, or an NDB approach, and GPS only approaches. GPS approaches may overlay any type of non-precision approach procedure except for localizer, LDA, and SDF approaches. GPS approaches may be either Phase II or Phase III overlay or named GPS only approaches. The major difference in the overlay approaches is that for a Phase II approach, the underlying approach NavAid(s) must be operating and the aircraft must be equipped for the underlying approach. It is not necessary to monitor the underlying NavAid(s). A Phase III GPS approach may be conducted even if the underlying NavAid(s) are not operating.

## Phase II GPS Approaches

GPS equipment may be used as the primary IFR flight guidance during a non-precision approach without actively monitoring the applicable navaid(s) which define the approach being used. However, the traditional ground-based navaid(s) required for the published approach and alternate should be operational and the associated avionics should be installed and operational. The approach should be requested and approved by its published name, such as “NDB Runway 24.” Modification of the published instrument approach name is not required. Note: Jeppesen Approach Procedure Charts identify Phase-2 overlay approaches by printing GPS contained in parenthesis, (GPS) along with the procedure name.

## Phase III GPS Approaches

Phase III GPS approaches must contain GPS in the title of the GPS procedure such as VOR or GPS RWY 24. Neither the ground station navaid(s) nor the traditional aircraft avionics is required. If the approach is to be flown using the Apollo NMS, it should be requested and approved by the GPS name, such as GPS RWY 24. If it is to be flown with the traditional avionics, it should be requested and approved by that name, such as VOR RWY 24.

You should always plan the route and approach to any required alternate airport such that a supplementary navigation system, such as GPS or Loran-C may not be available. The traditional en route and approach Nav aids must be operating and the aircraft must have the required avionics to use for required alternates. You may use a supplementary system, such as GPS to navigate to an alternate airport. You may execute a GPS approach to a required alternate, but you must plan for the possibility that GPS navigation will not be available.

FAA guidelines on IFR use of GPS and GPS approaches are contained in an FAA Advisory Circular (AC), AC 90-94. You should be familiar with the information in this AC before attempting GPS approaches.

In order to use the Apollo NMS for an approach, the approach must be selected from the NMS database and loaded into the active flight plan. Only approaches found in the Apollo NMS database may be flown with the Apollo NMS.

## Approach Waypoints

### General

The database waypoints which describe the TSO C129a GPS approaches correspond with the waypoints which appear on the approach procedure charts whenever possible. VORs, NDBs, and named Intersections will appear in the approach sequence as they are on the charts. The Rifle, Colorado VOR will be identified RIL, the Turno Locator/Outer-Marker (LOM) at Salem, Oregon will be identified SL, the Forsyth NDB, at Forsyth Montana will be identified FOR, and the HIKOX intersection, used as an Initial Approach Fix (IAF) for VOR/DME or GPS RWY 3 approach at Casper Wyoming, will be identified as HIKOX.

Many waypoints that are specific to TSO C129a GPS approaches require that a name be assigned to them, such as an Initial Approach Fix (IAF) which is shown on the approach procedure chart as a radial and distance from a VOR. These waypoints may or may not appear on the approach procedure charts. Jeppesen includes the names of many of these waypoints on their approach procedure charts; however, these names are usually not included on National Ocean Service (NOS) charts.

### TSO C129 Overlay specific.

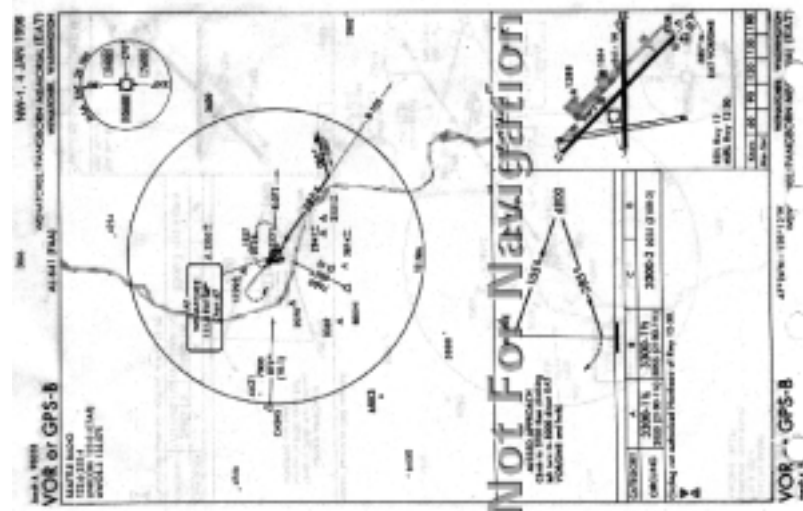
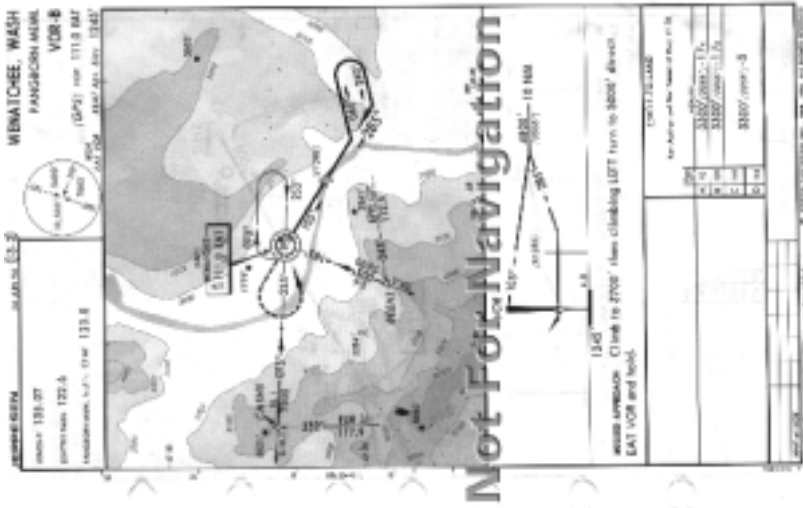
TSO C129 requires the equipment to prompt the pilot to enter the local altimeter setting, if not already entered, at 3 nm inbound to Final Approach Fix, FAF. It also requires that the equipment change RAIM alarm limits from 1 nm to 0.3 nm and to begin changing CDI sensitivity from 1 nm full-scale deflection to 0.3 nm full-scale deflection when 2 nm inbound to the FAF. The TSO also requires that the final leg of the approach be defined as a path between the FAF and the MAP waypoints (bearings to or from waypoints are not allowed for the final segment). For these reasons, a GPS TSO C129a approach must always have an FAF lying on the inbound course to the MAP, even when there is no such waypoint in the underlying approach. There are many GPS overlay approaches, such as the VOR or GPS-B approach to Wenatchee Washington, where there is no FAF inbound. The EAT VOR is the Initial Approach Fix (IAF), Final Approach Fix (FAF), Missed Approach Point (MAP), and Missed Approach Holding Point (MAHP). When there is no FAF inbound waypoint for a GPS

approach, it is necessary to add one so that the equipment can do these TSO required tasks. This equipment-required FAF is called a sensor FAF and it is always located on the final approach course prior to the MAP. If there is already a named waypoint which can be used, it becomes the sensor FAF. If not, a sensor FAF waypoint is created. In the Wenatchee approach example, this waypoint is named FF285. FF285 is the sensor FAF and the inbound course for the approach is 285°. FF285 appears on the Jeppesen approach procedure chart, but not on the National Ocean Service (NOS) approach procedure chart for this approach.

This is especially important to understand when a procedure turn or course reversal is required. If you are inbound from the CASHS intersection, a procedure turn is required. You must execute this procedure turn on your Apollo NMS relative to FF285, the TSO C129a FAF, not relative to the EAT VOR as depicted on the NOS chart as it is necessary to cross this sensor FAF waypoint inbound in order for the Apollo NMS to go approach active (approach active annunciator lit) and allow you to complete the approach. This is clearly depicted on the Jeppesen approach procedure chart.



Charts have been reduced for illustrative purposes.

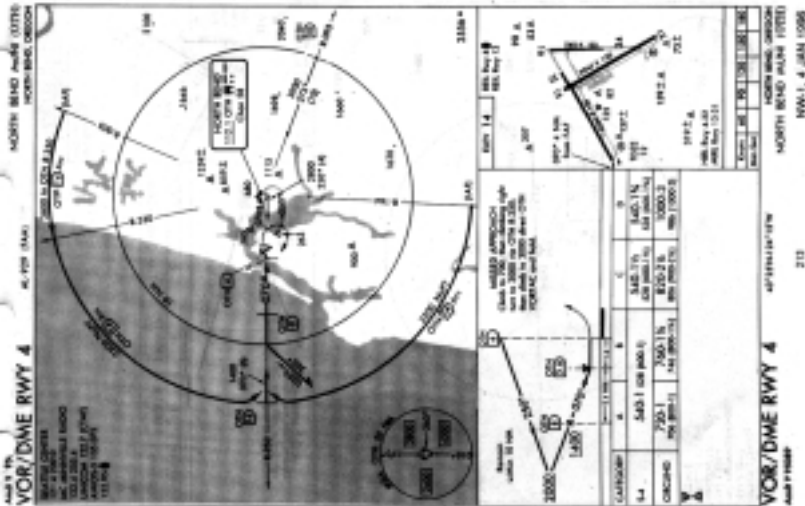
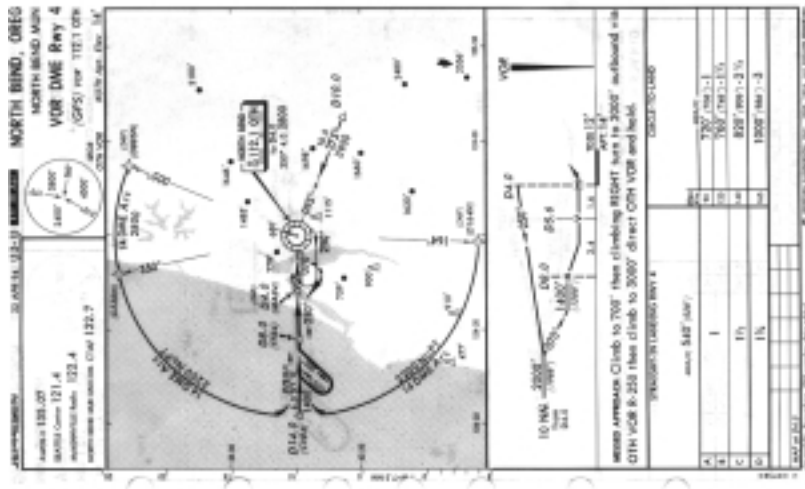


Reproduced with permission of Jeppesen Sanderson, Inc.

NOS Chart

Another type of waypoint which will have a name in your Apollo NMS database, but may or may not appear on your approach procedure chart is an IAF waypoint defined as a radial and distance from a VOR. An example would be the VOR DME RWY 4 approach to North Bend, Oregon. The IAF at the OTH 164 radial at 14 nm is contained in the Apollo NMS database as D164N (“D” for DME, 164 for 164 radial, and “N,” the 14th letter of the alphabet, for 14 nm.). It is also depicted on Jeppesen approach procedure charts with this name; however, this name is not found on NOS charts.

Charts have been reduced for illustrative purposes.



Reproduced with permission of Jeppesen Sanderson, Inc.

NOS Chart

There are several other types of waypoints which may appear in your Apollo NMS loaded approach and which may or may not appear on your approach procedure charts.

Following is a brief description of these types of waypoints and the naming convention followed.

## Identification

Each waypoint in an Apollo NMS flight plan has an identifying type and a name. When you view the flight plan legs, by turning the **Small** knob while viewing a flight plan in FLIGHT PLAN mode, the display will show a “FROM” waypoint and a “TO” waypoint for each leg. Under the names for the waypoint, the waypoint type is usually displayed although this field may be changed by pressing sel and turning the small knob to show other information such as leg ETE. The from-to-next page, located one click to the left of the ‘home’ navigation page, always shows the waypoint names and types for this two-leg “window” view of your active flight plan.

Most of the waypoint types for en route waypoints are quite familiar. They include ARPT for Airport, VOR, NDB, INT for intersection and USER for a user defined waypoint.

The approach waypoint types will usually also have familiar types, but there may be a few types which are new. The approach waypoint types include:

IAF Initial Approach Fix

FAF Final Approach Fix. (Note that there must always be a Final Approach Fix inbound for TSO C129a approaches. When an underlying approach, such as a VOR or NDB approach does not have an inbound FAF, one is created or added.)

IFAF Combined Initial and Final Approach Fix with no intermediate waypoints. (Sometimes a procedure turn or course reversal is required - this usually depends on the direction of flight)

MAP Missed Approach Point

MAHP Missed Approach Holding Point

ARC A DME arc terminator (The preceding flight plan leg is described as an arc to this waypoint. An ARC waypoint may follow another ARC waypoint.)

APPR An intermediate approach waypoint. These are sometimes used as step-down fixes or to define a course to the next approach waypoint.

An Apollo NMS TSO C129a approach will always begin at an IAF. It will always contain at a minimum an IAF, FAF, MAP, and MAHP sequence. The IAF and FAF may be combined. Waypoints may be used more than once; the same waypoint could be the IAF, the MAP, and the MAHP; however, TSO C129a non-precision approaches require that there always be a distinct FAF to MAP leg. Intermediate waypoints, of type APPR or ARC, may be anywhere in the sequence except between the FAF and the MAP.

The following example uses the VOR DME RWY 12 GPS-overlay approach to Baker City Oregon.

The Apollo NMS has a flight plan loaded from the Salem, Oregon airport to the Deschutes VOR, DSD, to the Baker City airport, BKE. An approach, the VOR DME RWY 12 approach with the D272Y (waypoint on the BKE VOR 272 radial at 25 nm.) IAF is selected and loaded. When viewing the flight plan legs, the following legs may be viewed.

|      |             |
|------|-------------|
| SLE  | TO DSD      |
| 1    | 100° 82.6NM |
| ARPT | VOR         |

|     |            |
|-----|------------|
| DSD | TO D272Y   |
| 2*  | 052° 134NM |
| VOR | IAF        |

The following legs replace the BKE airport in the flight plan and describe the approach sequence.

|       |      |        |
|-------|------|--------|
| D272Y | TO   | D297Y  |
| 3*    | 018° | 10.8NM |
| IAF   |      | ARC    |

|       |      |        |
|-------|------|--------|
| D297Y | TO   | D2970  |
| 4*    | 118° | 10.0NM |
| ARC   |      | APPR   |

|       |      |       |
|-------|------|-------|
| D2970 | TO   | CF12  |
| 5*    | 119° | 5.0NM |
| APPR  |      | APPR  |

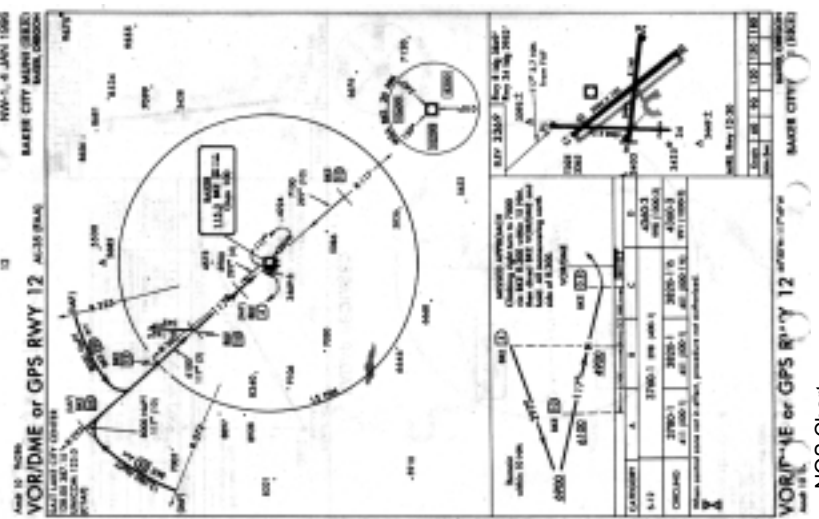
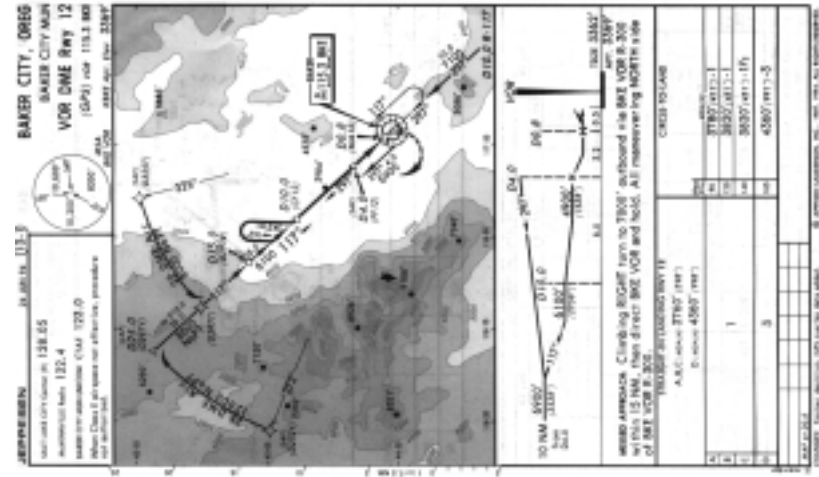
|      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| CF12 | TO   | FF12  |
| 6*   | 120° | 6.0NM |
| APPR |      | FAF   |

|      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| FF12 | TO   | MA12  |
| 7*   | 120° | 3.2NM |
| FAF  |      | MAP   |

|      |      |       |
|------|------|-------|
| MA12 | TO   | BKE   |
| 8*   | 120° | 0.8NM |
| MAP  |      | MAHP  |

Notice that these waypoints are all depicted on the example Jeppesen Approach plate; however, only BKE is depicted as such on the NOS plate (shown on the following page).

Charts have been reduced for illustrative purposes.



Reproduced with permission of Jeppesen Sanderson, Inc.

NOS Chart

## Naming Conventions

When a name must be provided for an otherwise unnamed waypoint, the naming will use the ARINC-424, chapter 7 specified convention whenever possible. There are a few types of waypoints, DME arc waypoints greater than 26 nm from the reference and single character NDB idents, which are not adequately addressed by the ARINC-424 specification. Most of these names are intuitive after you understand a few of the rules. The entire ARINC naming conventions are not included here, but the following guidelines will probably explain the names you see assigned to these waypoints.

### First, the exceptions:

DME arc or DME-distance/bearing waypoints that are greater than 26 miles from their reference point. The standard ARINC convention for DME arc or DME-distance/bearing (sometimes called Rho-Theta) waypoints is to use 'D' followed by the bearing from the waypoint, followed by an Alpha character from A to Z corresponding to the number of miles, from 1 to 26, rounded to the nearest whole mile. A waypoint on the BKE VOR 272 radial at 25 nm would then be named D272Y as is the IAF in the Baker, Oregon approach example above. When the distance is greater than 26 miles, such as for the Topeka, KS VOR DME RWY 3 approach, the waypoint is named by using the first two characters of the reference navaid ID, followed by the bearing from the navaid. The IAF at the Topeka VOR, TOP, located on the 231 radial at 31 nm is then named TO231. The IAF on the TOP 176 radial at 31 nm is named TO176.

Canada and some South American countries have multiple NDBs with the same ident. When these are in the same ICAO region, they can't both be in the data. When this happens, one airport which uses a Golf NDB, "G," would have the waypoint named "G." The next airport that uses a "G" NDB in the approach waypoints would have a waypoint named with the 1 letter ident and 'NB' for NDB appended to it; therefore, it would appear in the database as "GNB" at the second airport.

### Standard Naming Conventions

In general, the following codes are used to correspond to a waypoint type. When they are associated with an approach to a specific runway,



the runway is appended. When the approach is not to a specific runway, the approach bearing is appended. These codes are:

- FF Final Approach Fix
- CF Final Approach Course Fix (used when necessary to define a course to the FAF—all VOR DME approaches require a course fix waypoint).
- MA Missed Approach Point
- RW Runway Fix

Following the characters will either be a runway number, when associated with a particular runway, or a bearing corresponding to the course at that waypoint. A missed approach point that corresponds to a RWY 12 approach, would then be called MA12 if it is not the runway threshold. If the MAP were the runway threshold, it would be named RW12. A missed approach point associated with a VOR-A approach, where there are no published straight-in minimums to any runway, and where the final approach course is 120 would be named MA120.

**Bearing and Distance Waypoints:** Distance/bearing waypoints (sometimes called Rho - Theta waypoints), that are defined as a bearing and distance from a VHF navaid, are named with the character “D,” followed by the radial on which they are positioned, followed by a single alpha character from “A” to “Z” that corresponds to a distance from 1 to 26 nm. Thus a waypoint that is on a 350° radial at 10 nm will be named D350J and a waypoint that is on the 250 radial at 15 nm would be named D250O.

**Unnamed turn points, intersections, and bearing/distance waypoints:** Idents for unnamed turn points, intersections, or bearing/distance waypoints (other than VHF navaid distance/bearing), that are not coincidental with named waypoints, are constructed by using the ident of the nearest navaid together with the distance (rounded to whole miles). If the distance is less than 100 nm, the distance follows the navaid ident. If the distance is 100 nm or more, the last two digits of the miles are placed in front of the navaid ident. For example:

| <b>NAVAID</b> | <b>DISTANCE</b> | <b>IDENT</b> |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| INW           | 18              | INW18        |
| CSN           | 106             | 06CSN        |
| TCS           | 89              | TCS89        |

These are most often used for identifying bends in airways that occur at unnamed positions and other enroute uses. It is unlikely that you will often see this convention used to name any approach waypoints, but you will occasionally.

## Approach Topics

### Direct-To

The Direct-To function is used for several purposes. Especially during approach operations, you should be very comfortable with how this feature works. Review the Direct-To section of the manual if you need a refresher before proceeding with approaches.

In general:



Pressing **DIRECT-TO** once allows you to select a waypoint that you will navigate “Direct-To.” The first character will flash as the NMS is ready for you to select a waypoint to fly “Direct-To.”

```
VOR BTG
BATTLEGROUND
FACIL WA USA
```



Pressing **DIRECT-TO** a second time allows entry of a desired inbound course to the current active waypoint. Entering a desired inbound course to a waypoint automatically suspends leg-sequencing at that waypoint and lights the **OBS/HLD** annunciator.

```
OBS DTK: 001
TO BTG
BRG 002 DTK 001
```



Subsequent pressing of **DIRECT-TO** toggles between the two first uses.

The Direct-To feature defaults to the current active waypoint, the current displayed waypoint, or in FLIGHT PLAN mode, the waypoint displayed on the “TO” side of any displayed flight plan leg.

If the Direct-To is used during approach operations, and you select a waypoint that is not one of the waypoints already in the active flight plan, use of Direct-To will automatically unload any active approach. Use of Direct-To cancels parallel-track operations, if they are in use.

### Manually Selecting a Flight plan Leg

Approach operations often result in the need to manually select a leg of the active flight plan. Manual leg selection will often be required when operating with Radar vectors and there is the need to intercept an approach course. It may also occur when flying a DME-ARC to intercept an approach course.

1. Press **FPL** twice to reach your active flight plan. Then turn the **Small** knob to display the desired leg.



```
LGD TO BKE
 2* 146° 28.2NM
ARPT IAF
```

2. Press **ENT**.



```
LGD BKE
 PRESS ENT
 TO ACTIVATE LEG
```

3. Press **ENT** to accept the displayed destination waypoint. The unit will then go to NAV mode.

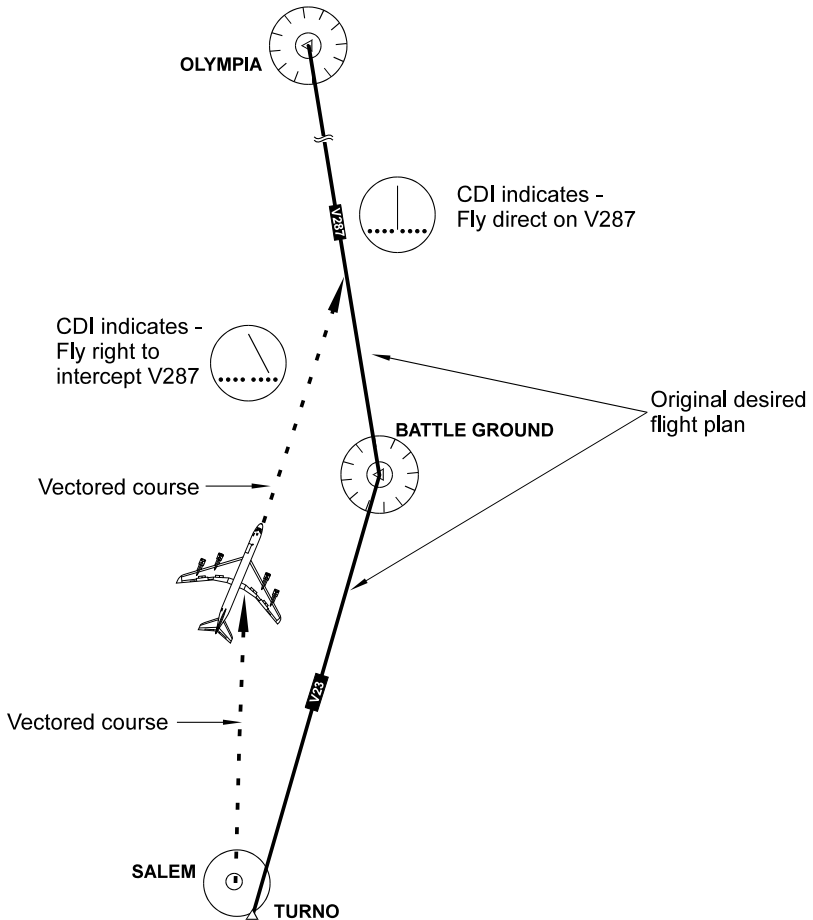


```
ETE BKE 00:05
 † 0.006
BRG 146 27.7NM †
```

### Example

You are flying a section of an active flight plan from SLE to BTG to OLM. As you approach the Portland area, you are given Radar vectors to the West of your course. ATC then tells you: “Fly heading 360, resume own navigation, intercept V287 to OLM, then as filed...”

Manually select the leg from BTG to OLM (which is V287). Even though you have not yet reached BTG, you will know when you have intercepted this course.





Press **FPL** twice to reach the active plan in FLIGHT PLAN Mode. This example uses a flight plan from the Salem (SLE) airport to the Battle Ground (BTG) VOR and then to the Olympia (OLM) VOR. Turn the Small knob clockwise one click to view the first leg of your flight plan.

Note that on the second line of each leg page, a number appears to indicate the leg number. An Asterisk is used after the number of each leg to indicate the active flight plan.

|      |      |        |
|------|------|--------|
| SLE  | TO   | BTG    |
| 1**  | 001° | 53.2NM |
| ARPT |      | VOR    |

Two asterisks after the leg number indicate the active leg of the active flight plan (SLE to BTG).

|     |      |        |
|-----|------|--------|
| BTG | TO   | OLM    |
| 2*  | 331° | 74.4NM |
| VOR |      | VOR    |

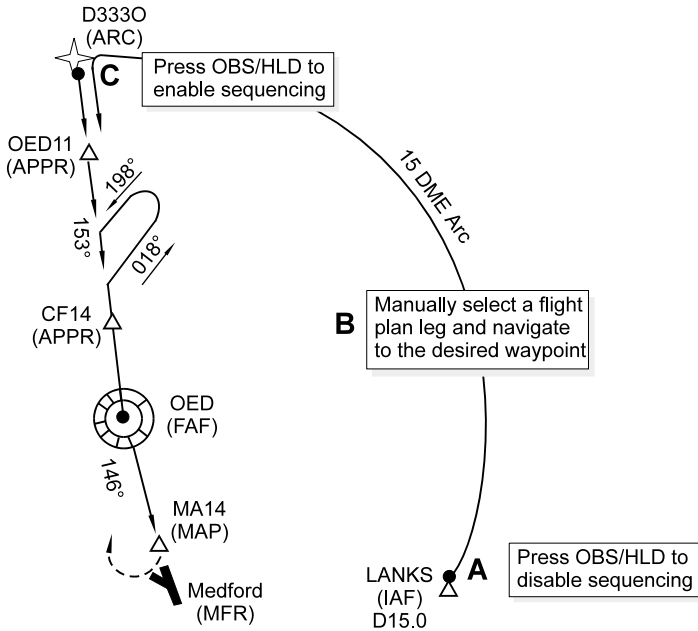


Turn the **Small** knob until the leg you wish to activate is shown and then press **ENT** twice.

Now fly the ATC assigned heading of 360 until the CDI centers to indicate that we have intercepted V287.

## Sequencing Details

When manually selecting a flight plan leg, you must be aware of the rules for sequencing. A flight plan will sequence to the next leg of the flight plan if the aircraft is on the “FROM” side of a line drawn through the “TO” waypoint perpendicular to the desired inbound course to that waypoint. If you manually select a leg that you have already passed, the NMS will immediately sequence to the next leg. There are times, such as when flying a DME-ARC to intercept a leg, that you will want to select a leg that according to the rule for sequencing you are already past. In order to keep the NMS from immediately sequencing when such a leg is selected, place your flight plan on hold by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button prior to selecting the leg. It is then necessary to re-enable sequencing, by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button again, when established inbound on the desired leg.



When approaching LANKS intersection, we will want to select the flight plan leg of D3330 to OED11. This is the inbound course that we want to intercept. We will use the DME-Arc page to navigate the arc. See *DME-Arc Procedure* section.

Since our current position, near the LANKS intersection (Point A), is already beyond our next “TO” waypoint (OED11), on the inbound course from D333O to OED11, our flight plan would sequence past our selected leg as soon as the leg is selected. To prevent sequencing, press **OBS/HLD** before manually selecting the leg. The OBS/HLD annunciator will turn on. Manually select the desired flight plan leg and navigate to the waypoint (Point B). When the leg is intercepted, press **OBS/HLD** again to enable sequencing (Point C). The OBS/HLD annunciator will then turn off.



## Procedure Turns

A procedure turn is a way of crossing the same waypoint more than once in order to accomplish a course reversal. First, make sure that flight plan leg sequencing is suspended. Second, after crossing the waypoint, set the correct inbound course to intercept. Finally, enable sequencing when you are established inbound.

In some cases, the NMS will know when a course reversal is required and will automatically suspend sequencing. This is the case when during an approach, the FAF is the active waypoint and there is more than a 70 degree difference between your bearing to the FAF and the final approach course (FAF to MAP course). In this case the NMS will automatically suspend sequencing and the **OBS/HLD** annunciator will light.

### Note

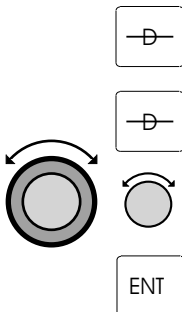


*The only other time the NMS will automatically suspend sequencing for you is when the active waypoint is either the Missed Approach Point (MAP) or the Missed Approach Holding Point (MAHP).*



When you know that a procedure turn or course reversal is required, check the **OBS/HLD** annunciator and press the **OBS/HLD** button if necessary to suspend sequencing and to light the annunciator.

When you cross the waypoint, the TO/FROM flag will change to “FROM.”



Next, set the desired inbound course by pressing **DIRECT-TO** twice. Set the desired inbound course with the **Large** and **Small** knobs. Then, press **ENT**.

### Note



*Selecting the inbound course is a very important step. Sequencing is performed relative to the inbound course you have selected. Once you are established on the selected inbound course, press **OBS/HLD** again to enable sequencing. The **OBS/HLD** light will turn off.*

Fly the procedure-turn or course reversal and intercept the selected inbound course to the waypoint.



When established inbound, press **OBS/HLD** to enable the flight plan to sequence upon the next arrival at the waypoint.

If you do not enable flight plan sequencing when established, the TO/FROM flag will go to “FROM” as you cross the waypoint.



Press the **OBS/HLD** button. Sequencing will occur immediately, if you are past the waypoint (on the “From” side).

### Procedure Turn at an FAF

A special condition occurs when a procedure turn is made at an IAF which is also the FAF. In this case, the Apollo NMS will treat the waypoint as the IAF until sequencing is enabled when established inbound. When you enable sequencing by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button thereby extinguishing the **OBS/HLD** annunciator light, the IAF/FAF waypoint becomes the FAF. If you are less than 2 nm from the FAF when you enable sequencing, then transition to Approach Active, i.e., the CDI sensitivity will begin changing to 0.3 nm full-scale deflection immediately. The approach annunciator will begin flashing immediately if all the conditions exist to allow the approach to go to the active condition (RAIM available, etc.). It is important for you to enable sequencing as soon after becoming

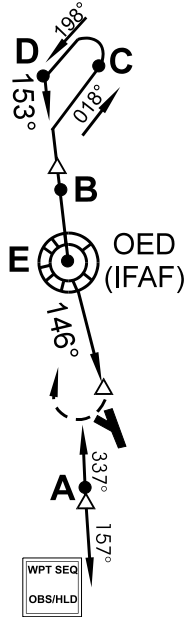
established inbound as practical when you want the waypoint to become the FAF.



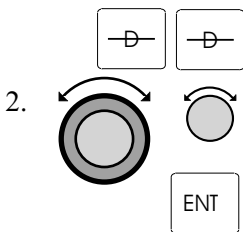
**Note**

*Combined IAF/FAF waypoints are identified by the Apollo NMS as IFAF waypoint types.*

**Procedure Turn Example 1**

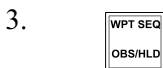


This example uses MFR VOR DME or GPS Rwy 14 procedure with IAF OED VOR using the OED 157/10 transition (see point A).



At point A, press **OBS/HLD** to suspend sequencing.

At point B, press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Use the **Small** and **Large** knobs to select 153° and then press **ENT** to establish an inbound course. Note that your CDI will “reverse-sense” while outbound, just like a VOR with 153°-TO selected on the OBS.



At point C, make your procedure turn.

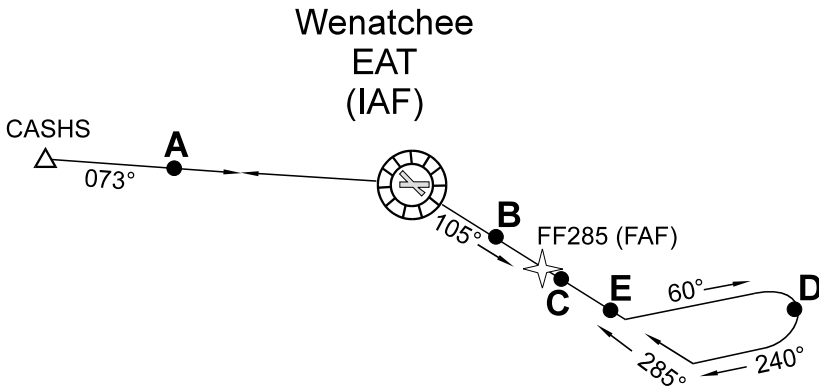
4.

At point D, press **OBS/HLD** to enable sequencing. Once sequencing is enabled, OED becomes the FAF and the NMS will transition to Approach Active at OED.

5. At point E, the NMS will be in Approach Active operation.

### Procedure Turn Example 2

For this example, use the VOR or GPS-B approach for Wenatchee, Washington. You will start the approach using the CASHS transition.



### Illustration Points

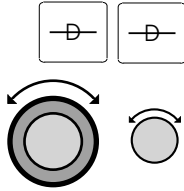
- Point A - Between CASHS and EAT.
- Point B - A heading of 105° between EAT and FF285.
- Point C - Continue on a heading of 105° between FF285 and the procedure turn until beyond FF285.
- Point D - Make the procedure turn.
- Point E - Intercept the 285° inbound to FF285.

1. 

|         |
|---------|
| WPT SEQ |
| OBS/HLD |

 Point A - A heading of 073° inbound to EAT.

2.



3.



Between EAT and FF285 (Point B) with a heading of 105°, press **OBS/HLD** to suspend sequencing.

Press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Select an OBS setting of 285° with the **Large** and **Small** knobs and then press **ENT** to select an inbound course. Note that the CDI will be “reverse-sensing” just as it would when outbound from a VOR with the OBS set to the inbound course. (Point C)

9.

At point D, make the procedure turn.

10.

At the intercept of the inbound course to the FAF, press **OBS/HLD** to allow sequencing at the FAF. Waypoint FF285 now becomes the FAF. (Point E)

## Holding Patterns

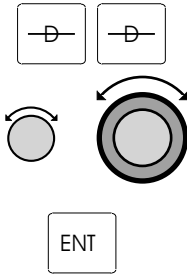
A holding pattern is operationally the same as a procedure turn except that you usually intend to make repeated crossings of the waypoint on a specific inbound course. For a holding pattern, like for the procedure turn, the steps will always be to:

1.



First, verify that sequencing is suspended, the OBS/HLD annunciator is lit, or suspend sequencing by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button.

2.



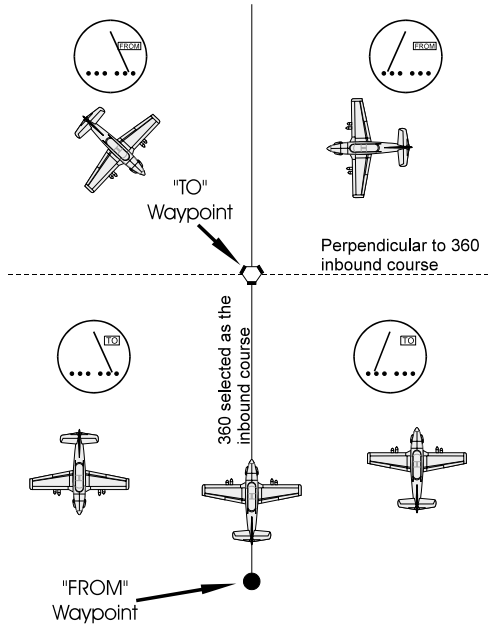
Second, after crossing the waypoint, establish the desired inbound course to the waypoint by pressing **DIRECT-TO** twice or pressing **ENT** for the "Set OBS Course" message. Select the inbound course with the **Small** and **Large** knobs, then press **ENT**.

3.

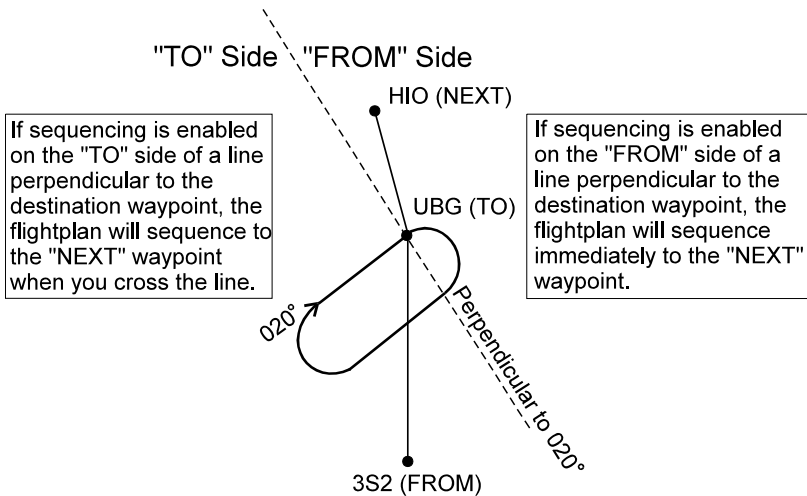


Enter the holding pattern by the most appropriate entry method. For example, Direct, Teardrop, or Parallel, just as you would enter that holding pattern at a VOR. Finally, when you are ready to exit the holding pattern, press **OBS/HLD** while still on the "To" side of the waypoint to enable sequencing the next time you cross the waypoint.

While you are in a holding pattern, the CDI/HSI cross-track deviation display and the TO/FROM flag will behave almost exactly the way they would if you were holding at a VOR. The TO/FROM flag will display "TO" prior to reaching the waypoint. The TO/FROM flag will display "FROM" after crossing the waypoint. TO and FROM is determined by position relative to a line drawn perpendicular to the selected inbound course and through the waypoint. The CDI will indicate "fly-left" if the aircraft is to the right of the desired track with reference to the selected inbound course. The CDI will indicate "fly-right" if the aircraft is to the left of the desired track with reference to the selected inbound course. As with traditional VOR navigation, these indications are always related to the aircraft position and not to the heading or direction of flight.

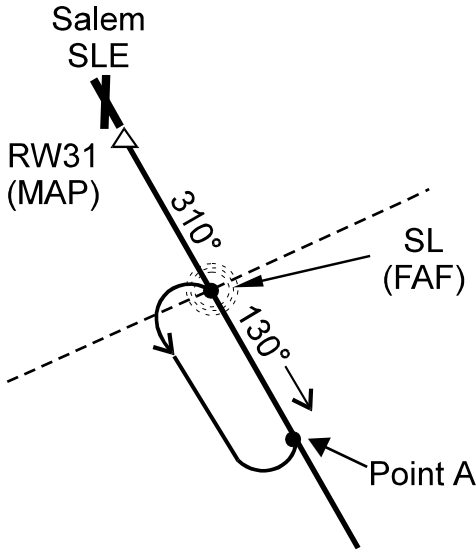


When you are ready to depart the hold, you enable sequencing with the **OBS/HLD** button. If you are on the “TO” side of the waypoint, the flight plan will sequence the next time you cross the waypoint. If you are on the “FROM” side of the waypoint, the flight plan will sequence immediately. The following example shows holding at the Newburg VOR (VBG) with 020° inbound selected as the “OBS” course to UBG.



A special case exists when holding at the FAF. The waypoint will not be treated as the FAF until sequencing is resumed inbound to the

waypoint. When the Hold waypoint is the FAF, be sure you are on the “TO” side of the waypoint and established inbound before you press **OBS/HLD** to resume sequencing. Also, if you are less than 2 nm from the waypoint when you resume flight plan sequencing, the NMS will immediately begin the transition to Approach Active.



Press the **OBS/HLD** button as soon as you are established inbound when you want the waypoint to become the FAF in order to allow as much time for this transition as possible.

This example shows holding at the FAF, SL (TURN0) for the NDB or GPS Runway 31 Salem (McNary) Airport (SLE)



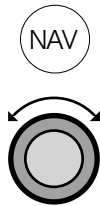
Press **OBS/HLD** to release the hold as soon as you intercept the inbound course (point A). This will allow you as much time as possible for transition to Approach Active operation. The waypoint SL (TURN0) becomes the FAF as soon as the hold is released.



## DME-ARCs (Arc Assist)

The Apollo NMS provides navigation pages customized for flying DME arcs. The Arc Assist page shows the identifier and type of waypoint being used as a reference. The Arc Assist page allows you to select and change the reference waypoint just as you would any other waypoint: the distance from that reference waypoint, the radial from that waypoint, and the desired track at that point on the arc. Actually there are two Arc Assist pages: one is labeled “Left” and the other “Right.” The only difference is that one shows the desired track for a left-arc and the other shows the 180 degree opposite desired track for a right-arc.

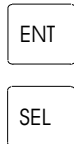
1.



The Arc Assist page is selected in navigation mode with the **Large** knob. The nearest VOR will display as the default reference point.

```
ARC ASSIST
REF: LMT VOR
PRESS ENT OR SEL
```

2.



Before you reach the starting waypoint of a DME Arc, press **ENT** to accept the displayed VOR or press **SEL** and select the desired waypoint. The selected waypoint is now used as the center of the arc.

```
LEFT ARC DTK 031
REF: ILR VOR
RAD 121° 131NM
```

3.



Turn the **Small** knob to view the left-arc or right-arc pages.

The desired track shown on a Arc Assist page is relative to the arc, not to the flight plan legs. The DME-Arc is always perpendicular to the present radial and it shows the desired track at the current radial if the aircraft was on the arc. It is the desired no-wind heading if established on the arc. If your distance from the reference waypoint is greater or

less than the distance should be for the published arc, then you will need to increase or decrease your heading to intercept the arc.

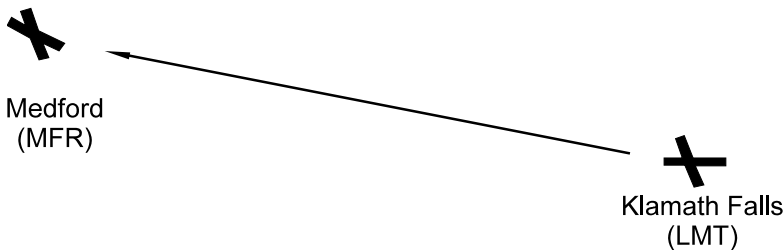
DME-Arcs are usually used as a method for pilots to intercept a flight plan leg, or a course to a fix. They are sometimes used as a method of reaching a subsequent fix such as a missed approach holding waypoint.

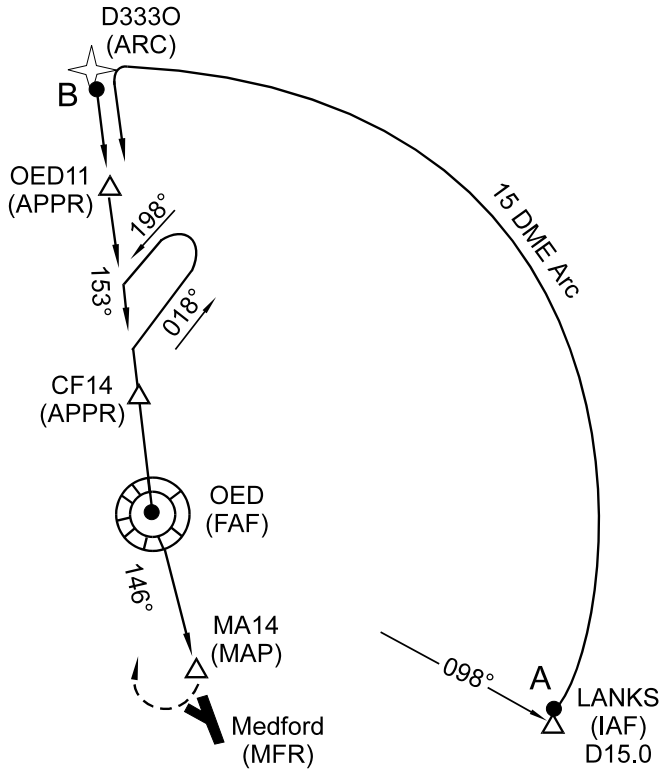
Flying a DME-Arc is a procedure. The Apollo NMS provides you with more information than traditional DME equipment including a Desired-Track (DTK) relevant to the arc at your current radial. The information provided and the method of navigating the arc and intercepting a new course is very similar to the information and techniques used to fly a DME-Arc with traditional equipment, except easier.

DME-Arcs are flown using an Apollo NMS Arc Assist page and the aircraft heading for primary guidance. This makes them nearly identical to flying a DME-Arc with traditional DME equipment. The NMS and your CDI should provide guidance on the course or leg that you intend to intercept so that the CDI gives intercept information exactly as if you were intercepting a familiar VOR inbound course.

### **DME Arc Example**

The following example describes the process for intercepting and flying a DME-Arc. This example uses a flight plan from Klamath Falls (LMT) to Medford (MFR) and will navigate along the VOR DME Runway 14 approach.





1. Create a flight plan from Klamath Falls, Oregon to Medford, Oregon. Activate the flight plan and then load an approach. Select the VOR DME 14 LANKS approach.

```
ACTIVE 52.2NM
VORDME 14:LANKS
APPROACH: MFR
```

2. In NAV Mode view the home NAV page and watch your progress to the first waypoint (LANKS).



```
ETE LANKS 00:10
0.05
BRG 270 28.1NM
```

3.



When you reach LANKS, the **MSG** button will flash. Press **MSG** to view the message. You will be advised to use the Arc Assist page in NAV mode.

SEQUENCE ALERT  
NEXT LEG DMEARC  
USE ARC ASSIST

ARRIVAL : LANKS  
NEXT LEG DMEARC  
USE ARC ASSIST

4.



Press the **OBS/HLD** button to suspend flight plan leg sequencing.

**Note**

*We are on the FROM side of the leg from D3330 to OED11. We are going to manually activate this leg and we don't want to sequence immediately.*

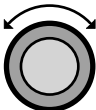
5.



Now, manually select the flight plan leg from D3330 to OED. This is the inbound course this Arc will intercept. Press **FPL**. Turn the **Small** knob to display the leg from D3330 to OED. Press **ENT**. Press **ENT** a second time to activate the leg

D3330 TO OED11  
PRESS ENT  
TO ACTIVATE LEG

6.



Press **NAV**. Turn the **Large** knob to the DME Arc page.

ARC ASSIST  
REF : OED VOR  
PRESS ENT OR SEL


7. Press **ENT** to choose the displayed default reference point. In this case, the OED VOR.

### Note



*If the displayed default reference is not the desired one for the DME Arc, press **SEL** and use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to select the correct reference waypoint. Use this page and your aircraft heading to fly the arc.*

```
LEFT ARC DTK 009
REF : OED VOR
RAD 98° 18.6NM
```

8.  After you intercept your inbound leg, i.e. your CDI begins to center. Press **NAV** to return to NAV Mode. Reactivate flight plan leg sequencing by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button.



### Note



*When intercepting and flying DME-ARCs, autopilots may be used only in the heading mode. Autopilots may be used to capture the course you select to intercept.*

## Other Uses for the Arc Assist Function


You can select the reference waypoint for the Arc Assist feature and it can be used at any time, not just during approach or terminal operations. This allows the Arc Assist feature to be used for a variety of uses other than flying DME arcs to intercept an approach course. It can of course be used to navigate DME arcs that are part of a published missed approach procedure. It can also be used for difficult operations such as conducting an over water search. By establishing a user waypoint at the center of such a search area and selecting that waypoint as a DME Arc reference point, you can fly circles about that waypoint at known distances. By gradually increasing the arc distance each time you pass a specific radial, you can expand the search area. Looking for something on the water or over featureless terrain is usually quite a challenge, especially when the winds are variable. The Arc Assist feature of the Apollo NMS can make this much easier.

## Missed Approaches

When you have reached the Missed Approach Point, you must either decide to land or not land. The Apollo NMS will continue to provide guidance on an extension of your inbound course to the MAP. The MAP will remain the active waypoint, the TO/FROM flag will indicate from, and the Apollo NMS will continue to display navigation data such as bearing and distance relative to the MAP.

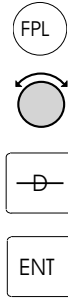
If you have decided not to land, you will then follow either the published or alternate missed approach instructions. Missed approach instructions can be very complex. However, the Apollo NMS can be used to provide guidance for virtually any missed approach.

The steps for a missed approach are as follows:

1. Begin your missed approach. This usually includes a procedural clearance such as: “Fly runway heading to altitude,” or “climbing left turn to a heading of xxx.”
2.  Cancel the approach on your Apollo NMS. Press **OBS/HLD** to enable sequencing and to cancel the approach.

As soon as you enable sequencing, the Apollo NMS will sequence to the next waypoint in the flight plan. This is the next waypoint in the published missed approach procedure. Note that if the next waypoint is the MAHP, it is an automatic holding point and sequencing will again be automatically suspended. The OBS/HLD light will come back on. Operation will change from Approach Active to Approach Transition. The Approach Active light will go out and the CDI will gradually go back to Approach Transition CDI sensitivity (from 0.3 nm to 1.0 nm full-scale).

3.



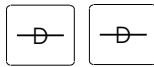
Verify or select the next waypoint in your flight plan. If the active waypoint is not the one you wish to navigate to, select a new active waypoint. If the active waypoint you want is already in your active flight plan, the easiest way to select it is to press **FPL**, to enter flight plan mode. Turn the **Small** knob until the waypoint you want is shown as the “TO” side of a flight plan leg (illustration). Then press **DIRECT-TO** and **ENT** to select the waypoint.

### Note



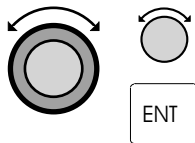
*If the same waypoint appears in the approach sequence more than once, be sure to turn to the occurrence you wish to select.*

4.



Verify or select the course to the waypoint. If a specific inbound course to the active waypoint is to be intercepted or flown, press **DIRECT-TO** twice.

5.



Enter the desired the inbound course with the **Large** and **Small** knobs. Then, press **ENT**. Selecting an inbound course in this manner will suspend flight plan sequencing and the **OBS/HLD** annunciator will light.

6.



If you do not wish to hold or execute a procedure turn at the next waypoint, press **OBS/HLD** to enable sequencing at the active waypoint. You may also want to manually select a flight plan leg to intercept. In this case, press **FPL**, turn the **Small** knob to the desired leg and press **ENT**. Press **ENT** again to activate it.

7.

After you have executed the missed approach, you may want to proceed to another destination or you may want to execute the same approach or another approach to the same airport.

## Select a New Destination Airport Using Direct-To

(Method 1)

Most often, the easiest way will be to edit and modify the current active flight plan. Remember that if you want to select an approach for the new destination, it must be the last waypoint in your active flight plan. If you use DIRECT-TO to select a new destination, edit the active flight plan and delete any subsequent waypoints before attempting to load an approach for the new destination. If you do use DIRECT-TO and you select a waypoint not currently in the active plan, any currently loaded approach will automatically be unloaded if you are within one of the approach legs of the flight plan.

Some people may choose the “Clear Waypoints” option on the main flight plan page prior to selecting a new Direct-to waypoint. While this guarantees that the new selected destination is the last waypoint in the flight plan, it will also result in a Nav-Flagged condition immediately after “delete waypoints” is selected. This is because the Apollo NMS has no waypoint to navigate to. Therefore, all navigation data is invalid until you select a new “TO” waypoint.


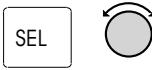

## Select a New Destination by Activating Another Flight plan

(Method 2)





You may also select another stored flight plan to your new destination and activate it. Activating a stored flight plan copies it into the active plan.

## Repeat the Same Approach or Select Another Approach at the Same Airport

(Method 3)

1.  Change the approach if necessary. Press **FPL** (twice - to make certain you are on the top, or home, page of the active flight plan).
2.  Press **SEL**, and turn the **Small** knob until “Change Approach?” appears.
3.  Press **ENT**. Select the new approach with the **Small** knob and then press **ENT**.



4.   When cleared, you will want to proceed to the IAF or to intercept an approach leg prior to the FAF via radar vectors. If you are to proceed direct to the IAF, press **FPL** to enter FLIGHT PLAN mode. Then, turn the **Small** knob until the leg with the IAF at the “TO” end is shown.
5.   Press **DIRECT-TO** and **ENT** to select the IAF as a direct to waypoint. If you are to intercept an inbound course to the IAF, select the inbound course and then remember to enable sequencing when established inbound on that course.
6. If you are being vectored to intercept an approach leg, manually select the leg you are intercepting.

Press **FPL** twice. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired leg.

Press **ENT**. The message displayed is “Press **ENT** to activate leg.”

Press **ENT**.



### Note

*If you are on the FROM side of the leg you are manually activating, be sure to press **OBS/HLD** to keep it from sequencing as soon as it is selected.*

**Notes**

# GPS Approach Operations

The information in this section covers GPS Approach Procedures for use with the Navigation Management System. The first part provides an overview of approach operations. The second part is a check list that gives an overview of the process for setting up and performing an approach to a suitable airport. The third part gives more detailed directions that cover many of the situations you will encounter including example approaches. A fourth gives a background about what RAIM is and what it means to your approach navigation.

## Operations

There are three general areas of operation (see the diagram on the next page): En Route, Approach Transition, and Approach Active.

**En route** operations describe what you do to set up your approach information before you are within 30 nm of destination airport and prior to enabling your approach. Load your approach to the active flight plan. At 30 nm your NMC will ask if you want to enable approach, press the ENT button. Then, enter the local altimeter setting. If you are less than 30 nm from your destination when you load an approach, you will be prompted immediately to enable it.

**Approach Transition** operations occur after you enable approach operation. The APPRCH annunciator will turn on. The CDI sensitivity will gradually scale from 5.0 to 1.0 nm full scale per side automatically. The IAF is in the Approach Transition operation area. The ACTIVE annunciator will start flashing when you are within 3 nm inbound to the FAF and not on hold. When you are 2 nm from the FAF, CDI sensitivity will gradually scale from 1.0 to 0.3 nm full scale per side automatically.

**Approach Active** operation begins when you cross the FAF and ends when you cross the MAP. The CDI is at 0.3 nm full scale per side. The OBS/HOLD Annunciator is on steady. The ACTIVE annunciator is on steady. If the ACTIVE annunciator is not on steady, do NOT continue the approach.

**Approach Transition** operation begins again when you cross the MAP. Decide whether you are going to land or perform a missed approach. If you are performing a missed approach procedure, press the OBS/HOLD annunciator to enable waypoint sequencing. The CDI will scale back to 1.0 nm.

## Waypoint Arrival Alert

A standard Waypoint Arrival Alert message is generated when you reach each approach waypoint. Press the MSG button to view and acknowledge the message. Information for navigating to the next waypoint. Generally you will then press the NAV button to return to the navigation displays. The Waypoint Alert indicates that you are close

(approximately 1 nm for every 100 nm/h or about 36 seconds) to the next destination waypoint.

| Approach Annunciator Summary |                   |                       |                 |                            |
|------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| Device or Annunciator        | En route          | Approach Transition   | Approach Active | Appr. Trans. (Missed Appr) |
| CDI Sens.                    | 5 nm*             | 1 nm                  | 0.3 nm          | 1 nm                       |
| Approach                     | Off               | On                    | On              | On                         |
| Active                       | Off               | Flashes 3 nm from FAF | On              | Off                        |
| OBS/HOLD                     | Off*              | Off*                  | Auto-On         |                            |
| for MAP*                     | Auto-On for MAHP* |                       |                 |                            |

\* Default is shown, but the value is user-selectable

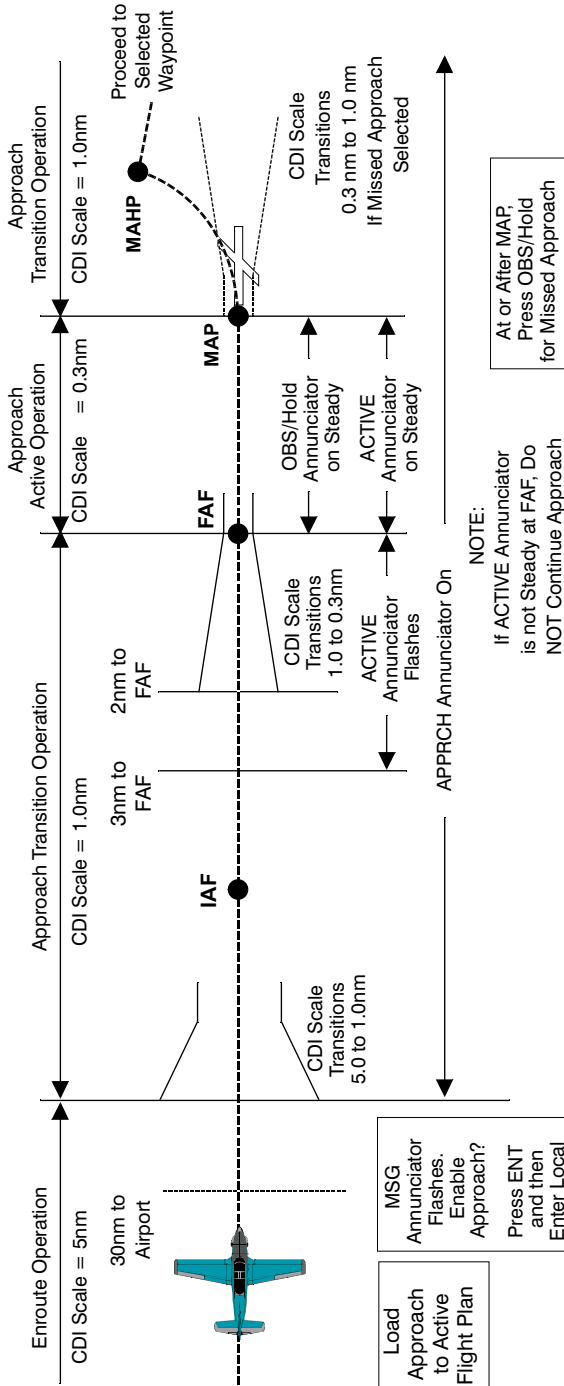
### CAUTION

*The Apollo NMS and the U.S. GPS Satellites use the World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS-84) horizontal datum for latitudes and longitudes. Approach plate or approach procedure data must be referenced to the WGS-84 or North American Datum 1983 (NAD-83) in order to use the approach. NAD-83 is for all practical purposes identical to the WGS-84 datum. All published U.S. and Canadian approach charts meet this criterion. Prior to using the Apollo NMS for any GPS approach other than a published U.S. or Canadian approach, you must first verify that the approach charts and approach waypoints use the WGS-84 or NAD-83 reference system. If the approach data is referenced to any other coordinate system, it can result in an unsafe position error.*



*The Apollo NMS database contains approach information. It is very important that the pilot verify that approach data is current prior to use. The approach data contained in the Apollo NMS does not replace or eliminate the need for Approach Plates or published Approach Procedures.*

*Some approach procedures may not be suitable for the Apollo NMS operational characteristics and may be omitted from the Apollo NMS database. Since an approach must be in the database in order to be selected and flown using the Apollo NMS, it is good pre-flight practice to make sure that the database contains anticipated approaches.*



# NMS Approach Procedure

There are three general types of NMS operation (see diagram on the next page): En route, Approach Transition (or Approach Enabled) and Approach Active. When conducting an approach, your Apollo NMS will progress from En Route to Approach Transition when the pilot enables the approach, then to Approach Active, and possibly back to Approach Transition in the event of a missed approach.

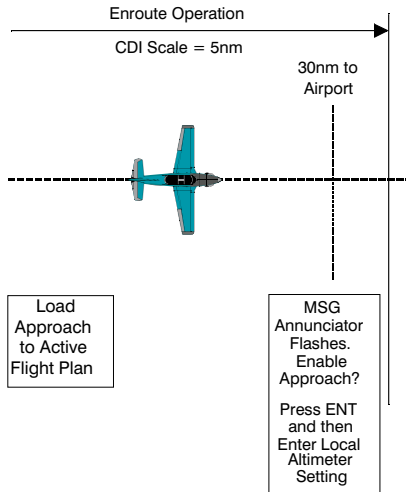
## Action

## Explanation

Turn on your NMC system and all related equipment.

### En route Operations

**En route Operations** describe all operations prior to 30 nm from your destination airport. Your Apollo NMS is providing En route operation whenever the Approach annunciator light is not on. The default CDI sensitivity for en route is 5.0 nm; however, you may manually select other CDI sensitivities. Generally, you will select your destination airport prior to departure or while en route, and you will usually select and load an anticipated approach from the database into your active flight plan while en route.




### Note



*An approach can only be selected for an airport when it is the last waypoint in your active flight plan.*

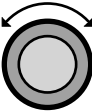
## Load a Destination Airport

The destination must be an airport.

- 

Load your flight plan. You may activate or edit an existing flight plan. Press the FPL button to reach FLIGHT PLAN mode.

If the desired flight plan is active, go to the next section “Load Approach Information.”

- 

If the desired flight plan is not displayed, turn the **Large**, outer knob to display the desired flight plan.

```
RTE 1 1020NM
DEST WPT: SEA
INACTIVE ◆
```

- Press **SEL**. “Activate” will flash. Press **ENT** to activate the selected flight plan.

SEL

ENT

```
RTE 1 1020NM
DEST WPT: SEA
ACTIVATE?
```

## Load Approach Information

- Press **FPL**.
- Press **SEL** to reach the “Load Approach?” selection.

FPL

SEL

```
ACTIVE 1020NM
DEST WPT: SEA
LOAD APPROACH?
```

3.



Press **ENT**. The approach selections will now flash. The approach name is in the middle row on the left; the IAF name is shown on the right. Press **INFO** to view the waypoints for a flashing approach name.

```
ACTIVE 0.0NM
VOR DME A: UBG
APPROACH: HIO ↕
```

4.



Turn the **Small**, inner knob to display the approach choices. When the desired approach and IAF is displayed, press **ENT**.

```
ACTIVE 33.1NM
APPR ARPT: UBG
APPROACH: HIO ↕
```

5.



Press **NAV** to return to Navigation mode.

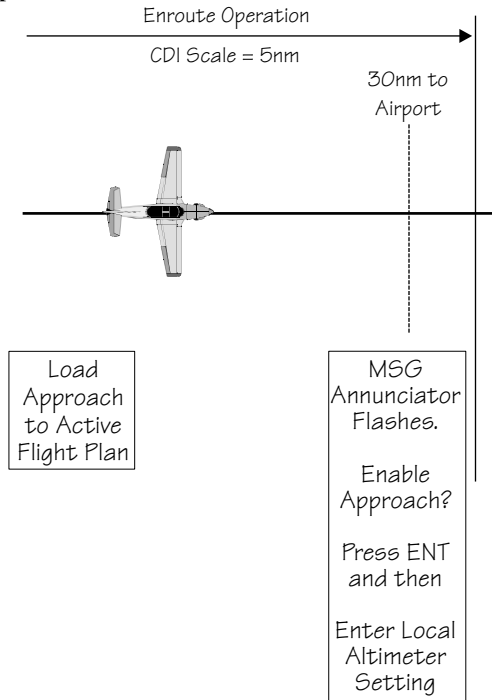
### Approach Transition Operation (Enabling Approach)

**Approach Transition Operation** begins when you enable an approach which has already been selected from the database and loaded into the active flight plan. The Approach annunciator will be on (and the Approach Active annunciator will be off) to indicate that your NMS is operating in Approach Transition. The CDI sensitivity is locked at 1.0 nm for Approach Transition. After an approach has been loaded into the active flight plan, you will be prompted with a message to enable the approach. This prompt occurs when you are 30 nm from your destination assuming the approach was loaded prior to that. The enable approach message occurs immediately after loading an approach if you are already closer than 30 nm. As soon as you enable the approach by pressing **ENT** when the “Enable Approach?” prompt-message is displayed, the Approach annunciator will come on, the CDI will begin a smooth change to a 1 nm full-scale deflection sensitivity, and you will get a prompt-message to enter the local altimeter setting. Approach Transition Operation will usually be preceded by En route Operations. Approach Transition will be



preceded by Approach Active in the event of a missed approach or a canceled approach.

An approach is enabled by pressing **ENT** when the “Enable Approach?” prompt is displayed. Note that there are two methods to enable an approach:



### Method 1

Press **ENT** when the “Enable Approach?” prompt is displayed as a message. The message will occur when an approach is loaded from the database and the aircraft is 30 nm or less from the destination airport. This message-prompt is repeated at 3 nm inbound to the FAF if the approach has not yet been enabled.

### Method 2

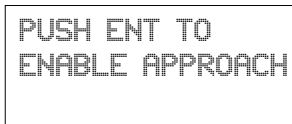
When an approach has been loaded, the aircraft is less than 30 nm from the destination airport, and the approach has not yet been enabled, pressing **FPL** will result in displaying the “Enable Approach?” prompt. Press **ENT** when this prompt is displayed to enable the approach.

### At 30 nm from Destination Airport

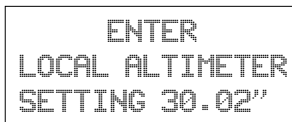
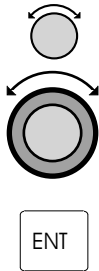
1. At 30 nm from the destination airport, the MSG annunciator will flash.



Press **MSG**. The display will ask if you want to “Enable approach.” Press **ENT** to enable the Approach operation. The Approach annunciator will light and the CDI sensitivity will automatically scale gradually from 5 nm to 1 nm full scale per side.



2. The display will verify that you have enabled the selected approach. You will now be prompted to enter the local altimeter setting. Turn the **Small** knob to change the barometric pressure values and turn the **Large** knob to move the cursor. Press **ENT**.



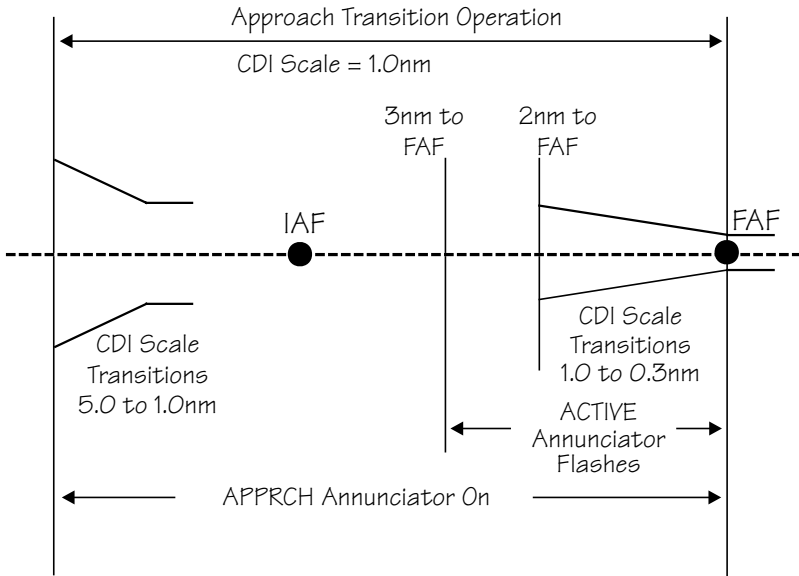
3. Press **NAV** to return to the Navigation Mode.



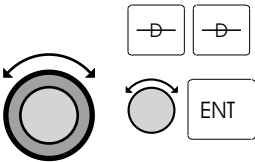



### Initial Approach Fix (IAF)

1. Prior to the Initial Approach Fix (IAF), the MSG indicator will light to announce a Waypoint Arrival Alert. Press **MSG** to acknowledge the message and view the instructions to the next approach point.



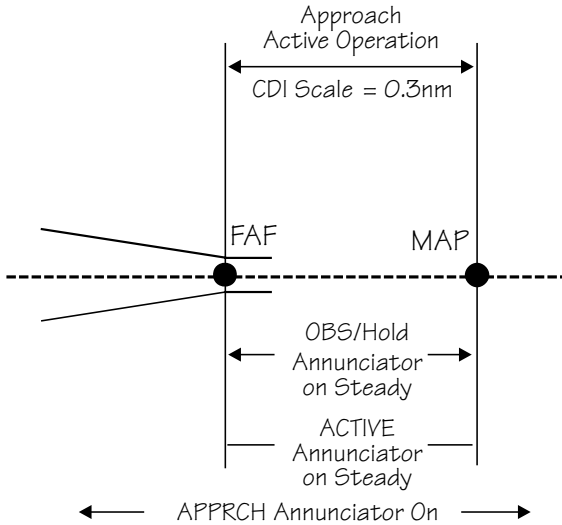


2.  Press **NAV** to return to the Navigation Mode.
  
3.  Prior to reaching the IAF, determine if sequencing is desired. Press **OBS/HLD** and execute a procedure turn or holding pattern entry if a course reversal procedure is required.
  
4.  If hold is selected after first crossing the IAF, press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Select your new inbound course to the IAF with the **Large** and **Small** knobs. When finished, press **ENT**.
  
5.  Press **OBS/HLD** again to resume sequencing and to continue your approach when you have established an inbound heading.

**Final Approach Fix (FAF)**

1. When you are 3 nm inbound to the Final Approach Fix (FAF) and not on Hold, the Active light will flash to

indicate that you are about to transition to Approach Active. At 2 nm from the FAF, the CDI sensitivity will start to gradually scale from 1.0 to 0.3 nm full scale. At the FAF, CDI sensitivity will be at 0.3 nm full scale.



NOTE:  
If ACTIVE Annunciator is not Steady at FAF, do NOT Continue Approach

Before, At or After MAP, Press OBS/Hold for Missed Approach

2.

MSG

NAV

When you are near the Final Approach Fix, the MSG annunciator will flash and a standard Waypoint Arrival Alert will turn on. Press **MSG** to acknowledge the message and then press **NAV** to return to Navigation Mode.

```
ARRIVAL: CVO
NEXT DTK 018°
```

## Approach Active Operation

**Approach Active Operation** begins when you cross the Final Approach Fix (FAF) inbound if an approach has been loaded and enabled, the FAF is the active waypoint, and there are no system-detected reasons not to continue the approach (see Message Mode starting on page 39). The Approach Active annunciator is illuminated for Approach Active. The CDI sensitivity is 0.3 nm for approach active. Approach active is always preceded by Approach Transition. At 3 nm inbound to the FAF, the Approach Active annunciator will begin to flash. This is to alert you to the impending automatic CDI sensitivity change. At 2 nm inbound to the FAF, the CDI will begin a smooth change to Approach Active sensitivity which will be reached at the FAF. At the FAF, the Approach Active annunciator will come on solid indicating that the Apollo NMS is providing approach guidance. As soon as you cross the FAF, the active flight plan sequences and the Missed Approach Point (MAP) becomes the active waypoint. Sequencing is now automatically suspended and the OBS/HLD annunciator will be on. Anytime the Apollo NMS is in Approach Active Operations, the approach may be canceled by pressing the OBS/HLD button. Canceling the Approach will result in returning to Approach Transition operation. The Approach Active light will go out and the CDI will smoothly scale back to 1.0 nm sensitivity. Once Approach Active has been canceled by the pilot, it can not be made active again except by again crossing the FAF inbound.

### Important





*Verify that the Approach Active annunciator illuminates at the FAF. If for any reason it is not on, do NOT continue the approach.*

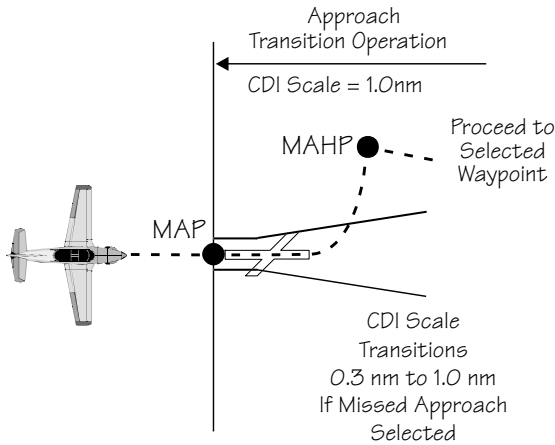
## Crossing the Final Approach Fix

1. You are now in Approach Active operation. The Approach Active annunciator will light continuously. If the Approach Active annunciator is not lighted continuously, do NOT continue the approach.

- 2. The OBS/HOLD annunciator will light. Flight Plan leg sequencing to the MAP is suspended.

### Missed Approach Point (MAP)

- 1.  The MSG annunciator will indicate a standard Waypoint Alert as you approach the MAP. Press the **MSG** key to acknowledge the message. Press the **NAV** key. 



← APPRCH Annunciator On →

|                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| At or After MAP,<br>Press OBS/Hold<br>for Missed Approach |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|

- 2. The OBS/HOLD annunciator will remain lighted solid. CDI resolution is maintained at 0.3 nm. The To/From flag will switch from “TO” to “FROM” as you cross the MAP.
- 3. If desired, and conditions allow, land the aircraft.

- 4. If you do not choose to land, cancel the approach. Follow the published missed approach instructions or clearance as appropriate. Press the **OBS/HOLD** annunciator to deselect HOLD and




cancel the approach. The CDI resolution will gradually increase to 1.0 nm full scale deflection.

5. Your NMS will sequence to the next waypoint in the missed approach procedure.

## Canceling An Approach

Whenever the Approach Active annunciator is lit, an approach may be terminated by a single action of the pilot. You may want to cancel an active approach to try the approach again, choose another approach, to proceed to another airport, or in response to an “Abort Approach” message. In any case, you must follow the appropriate missed approach instructions.

1.  Press the **OBS/HLD** button.

Canceling an approach does the following:

Sequencing is enabled

The unit returns to Approach Transition operations

Approach Active annunciator turns off

Approach annunciator remains turned on

CDI scales to 1 nm full-scale deflection

RAIM alarm limit goes from 0.3 nm to 1.0 nm

Though you have canceled the active approach, it is still loaded and enabled. You may activate a previous leg or waypoint and navigate to try the approach again. Your flight plan remains unchanged.

### Note

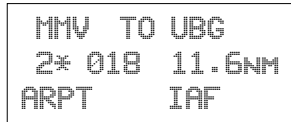



*After an active approach has been canceled, you cannot immediately reactivate it. The approach can only be reactivated by crossing the FAF inbound, when the FAF is the active waypoint.*

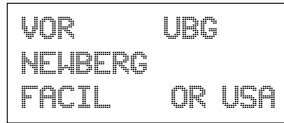
### Repeating an Approach

You must cross the FAF inbound with the FAF selected as the active waypoint to allow reactivation of an approach. So, set up a course to return to the IAF and then back to the FAF.



- 1.  Press **FPL**. Turn the small, inner knob to display the IAF as the TO waypoint.

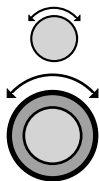


- 2.  Press **DIRECT-TO** and then **ENT** to establish a direct course back to the IAF.

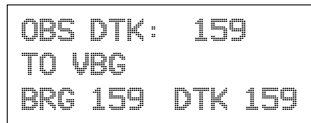


or

- 3.   Press the **DIRECT-TO** button twice to set a new Desired Track (DTK) to the selected waypoint. This also activates the OBS/HLD annunciator, so remember to press the **OBS/HLD** annunciator to enable waypoint sequencing when you have established your inbound course.



Turn the Small knob to change the flashing value. Turn the Large knob to move the cursor. Press ENT when finished. Press one of the mode buttons (i.e. NAV, DB, FPL, or SYS) to quit without changing anything.





**Note**





If you wish to intercept an approach leg, manually activate that leg. This is useful when receiving radar vectors back to intercept an approach leg. See “Manually Selecting a Flight Plan Leg” in the Approach Overview section.


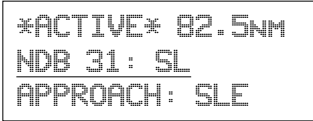
**Selecting a Different Approach**




After a missed approach, you may want to select one of the other approach choices for your intended destination airport.

- Press **FPL** and then the **SEL** button.

Turn the **Small** knob to display a flashing “Change Approach.”





- Press **ENT** to change the approach. The center row showing the approach choices will flash.



- Turn the **Small** knob to display the approach choices. If desired, press **INFO** to display a list of the approach waypoints. Press **ENT** to choose the displayed approach.

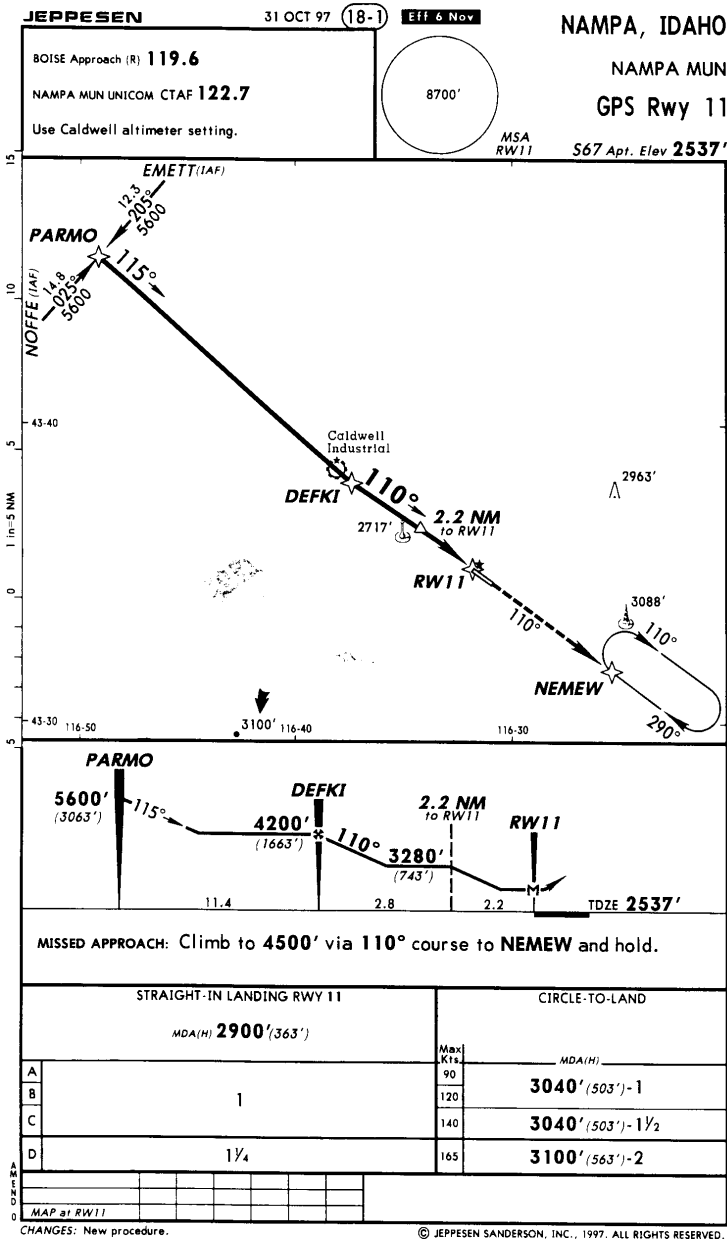




**Notes**

# Approach Examples

A variety of the situations that you may encounter while using approaches is included in this section. This section expands on the previous Approach Basics section. Use this section to familiarize yourself with the procedures that you expect to use in normal flight operations.

Reproduced with permission of JeppesenSanderson Inc.  
 Reduced for illustrative purposes.

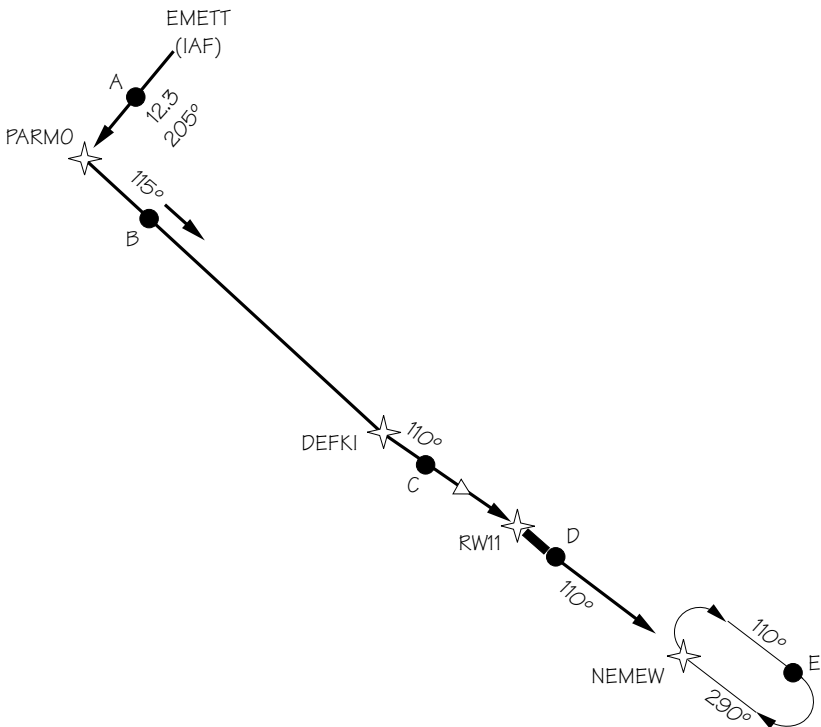


## Example 1

This example illustrates the approach to Nampa, Idaho. This example was selected because it is a new approach designed especially for TSO C-129 GPS equipment. It is probably as simple an approach to fly with the Apollo NMS as there is.

### Note

*It is good planning to always consider what you would do in the event of any equipment failures that may occur during flight operation, including your navigation system. Always make yourself aware of other available nav aids should you need to select an alternate method of navigation.*



## Illustration Points

- A - Between EMETT (IAF) and PARMO (APPR)
- B - Between PARMO (APPR) and DEFKI (FAF)
- C - Between DEFKI (FAF) and RW11 (MAP)
- D - Between RW11 (MAP) and NEMEW (MAHP)
- E - In Holding Pattern

## En Route

Load and activate your flight plan, then load the approach. Select the Nampa Municipal GPS Rwy 11 approach.

### 30 nm From Nampa Municipal Airport

1. The message annunciator will flash. Press **MSG** and then **ENTER** to enable the approach.
2. Select the local Altimeter Setting with the **SMALL** knob and then press **ENTER**. Press **NAV** to return to NAV mode.

### Point A (Between EMETT and PARMO)

1. Fly the segment.
2. Verify that the Approach annunciator is on.

### Point B (Between PARMO and DEFKI)

1. Fly the segment.
2. The Approach Active annunciator will begin flashing 3 nm from DEFKI (FAF) indicating that approach RAIM prediction is beginning. The transition to approach active is starting.
3. At 2 nm from DEFKI the CDI scale will begin changing from 1 nm to 0.3 nm full scale deflection.

### Point C (Between DEFKI and RW 11)

As you cross DEFKI, verify that the Approach Active and OBS/HLD annunciators are on steady.

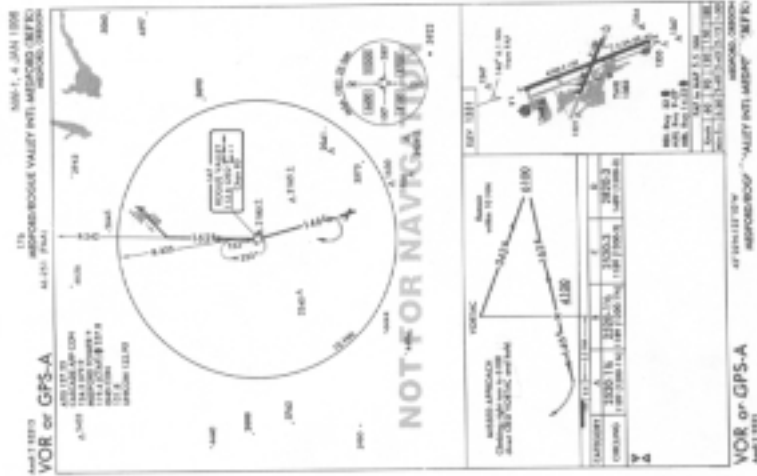
### **Point D (Missed Approach)**

1. If you choose a Missed Approach at RW11, cancel the Approach Active operation by pressing the **OBS/HLD** button. The CDI sensitivity will now gradually scale back to Approach Transition sensitivity (1.0 nm full scale).
2. NEMEW will become the TO waypoint. The inbound course to NEMEW is already the same as the approach inbound, so you do not need to enter it.
3. NEMEW is the MAHP and will automatically become a holding waypoint. Verify that the OBS/HLD annunciator is lighted.

### **Point E (Holding Pattern)**

1. After crossing NEMEW, you will be prompted to set the OBS course. Turn the **LARGE** and **SMALL** knobs to select 290° and press **ENTER**.
2. Fly the holding pattern. A parallel entry should work well.

Reproduced with permission of JeppesenSanderson Inc.  
 Reduced for illustrative purposes.



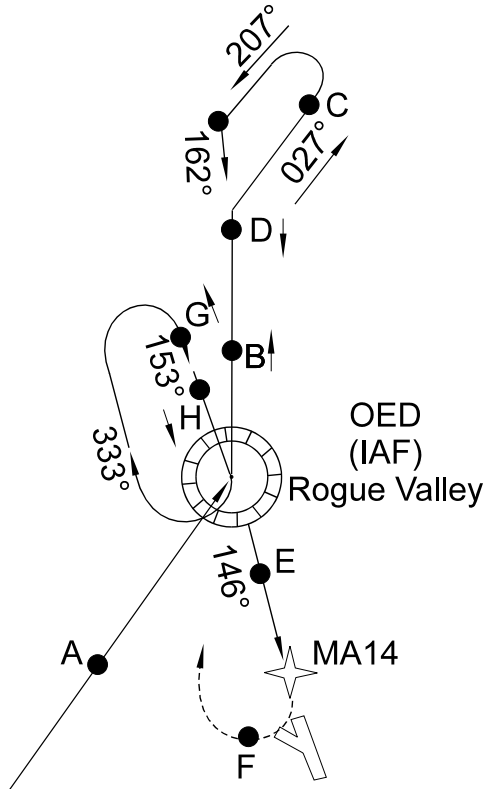


## Approach Example 2

This example uses an active flight plan ending at the Medford, Oregon airport (MFR). The last two waypoints in this example are the Klamath Falls, Oregon VOR (LMT) and the Medford airport.

### Illustration Points

- A - Inbound to OED from the south
- B - Outbound on the procedure turn
- C - On the procedure turn
- D - Inbound to OED
- E - Between OED and MA14
- F - Turning right and climbing to 6100 feet
- G - Outbound from OED to enter the holding pattern
- H - Inbound to OED in the holding pattern



## En Route to Medford (MFR)

1. Create a flight plan named “Example 2” with the last two waypoints as the Klamath Falls VOR (LMT) and the Medford airport (MFR).
2. Activate the flight plan. Press **FPL**. Turn the **Large** knob to display the “Example 2” flight plan. Press **SEL** and then **ENT**.
3. Load the VOR or GPS-A approach to MFR. In flight plan mode, press **SEL**. The display will flash “Load Approach?” Press **ENT**. Select “VOR A:OED” with the **Small** knob, if necessary, and press **ENT**. Turn the **Small** knob to view the waypoint legs. Press **NAV** to view NAV info.

```
ACTIVE 112NM
VOR A:OED
APPROACH: MFR
```

## 30 nm from Medford (MFR)

1. At 30 nm from your destination (MFR), the MSG annunciator will light. Press **MSG**. At the “Enable Approach” prompt, press **ENT**.

```
ENABLE APPROACH?
```

2. The Altimeter Setting will flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the local barometric pressure and press **ENT**. Press **NAV** to return to NAV mode.

```
ENTER
LOCAL ALTIMETER
SETTING 29.92''
```

### **Point A (Inbound to OED from the south)**

1. Suspend flight plan sequencing at OED to prepare for a procedure turn. The combined IAF/FAF waypoint is noted on your Apollo NMS as IFAF. Press the **OBS/HLD** button.
2. Verify that the Hold annunciator is ON.

### **Point B (Outbound on the procedure turn)**

1. After crossing OED, the To/From flag will indicate FROM. OED will remain the active waypoint.
2. Select the desired inbound course to OED. Press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Turn the **Large** and **Small** knobs to display 162°. Press **ENT**.

```
OBS DTK: 162°
TO OED
BRG 175 DTK 020
```

### **Point C (On the procedure turn)**

1. Fly outbound via the 342 radial of OED to execute a procedure turn. A distance of 2 to 3 nm outbound is recommended in order to allow adequate distance for the Apollo NMS to transition to Approach Active as you pass the FAF inbound.

2. Fly as you would with a VOR with “162° TO” selected on the OBS.

### **Point D (Inbound to OED)**

1. As you intercept the 162 inbound re-enable flight plan sequencing. Press **OBS/HLD** as soon as you enable sequencing, OED becomes the FAF. At 3 nm inbound to OED, the Approach Active annunciator will begin flashing to indicate an impending CDI sensitivity change.
2. At 2 nm inbound to OED, the CDI sensitivity will begin changing from 1 nm to 0.3 nm full-scale deflection.
3. As you cross OED, the Approach Active annunciator will come on solid to indicate that approach operation is active and you may continue the approach to the FAF.

### **Point E (Between OED and MA14)**

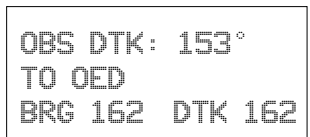
1. Continue to the missed approach point. Verify that the OBS/HLD and Approach Active annunciators are lighted steady.
2. If you wish to cancel Approach Active, press **OBS/HLD**. Your Apollo NMS will then revert to Approach Transition with 1 nm CDI deflection and a 1 nm RAIM alarm limit.

## Point F (Choosing not to land at the MAP)

1. At the Missed Approach Point, if you are not going to land, follow your missed approach clearance. The MAP will remain active and your Apollo NMS will continue to provide guidance on the final approach course until you press the **OBS/HLD** button. If you choose to not land, the published missed approach instructions say “climbing right turn to 6100’ direct OED VOR and hold.” You will then press the **OBS/HLD** button as soon as you decide to miss the approach.
2. The CDI will scale out to 1 nm and OED will become the active waypoint. As you reach 6100’, press **DIRECT-TO** and then press **ENT** to establish a direct route to the active waypoint (OED).
3. Because OED is the MAHP, it is automatically a Hold waypoint and flight plan sequencing is suspended. Verify that the OBS/HLD annunciator is lighted.

## Point G (At the MAHP)

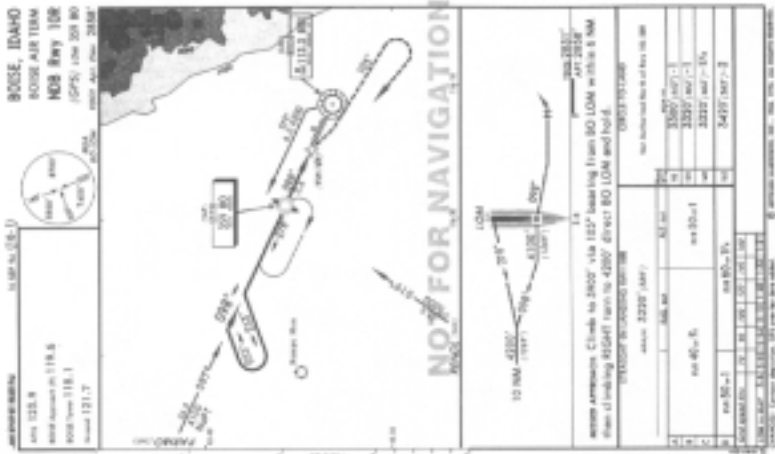
1. Upon crossing OED, select the inbound holding course (153°). Press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Use the **Large** and **Small** knobs to select 153°. Then, press **ENT**.



```
OBS DTK: 153°
TO OED
BRG 162 DTK 162
```

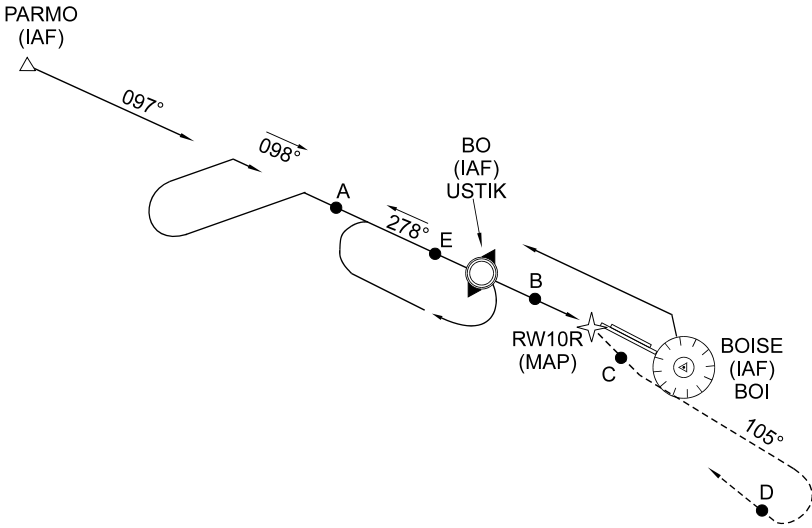
2. After selecting 153° inbound, enter the Hold waypoint as you would for a VOR with 153° selected on the OBS.

Reproduced with permission of JeppesenSanderson Inc.  
 Reduced for illustrative purposes.



### Example 3

This approach example describes an NDB approach from PARMO (IAF) to the Boise, Idaho airport (BOI). This example was chosen primarily because of the unusual published missed approach instructions and to illustrate how to navigate this missed approach with the Apollo NMS.



### Illustration Points

- A - Between Parmo (IAF) and BO (FAF)
- B - Between BO (FAF) and RW10R (MAP)
- C - Just past RW10R (MAP)
- D - Turn inbound to BO (MAHP)
- E - Just past BO (MAHP)

## En Route to BOI

1. Create a flight plan named “Example3” with the last two waypoints as the Ontario, Oregon airport (ONO) and the Boise, Idaho airport (BOI).
2. Activate the flight plan. Press **FPL**. Turn the **Large** knob to display the “Example3” flight plan. Press **SEL** and the **ENT**.

```
ACTIVE 43.7NM
DEST WPT:
ACTIVE
```

3. Load the NDB approach to BOI. In flight plan mode, press **SEL**. The display will flash “Load Approach?” Press **ENT**. Select “NDB 10R:PARMO” with the **Small** knob and press **ENT**.

```
ACTIVE 48.9NM
NDB 10R:PARMO
APPROACH: BOI
```

## 30 nm from Boise (BOI)

1. At 30 nm from your destination the MSG annunciator will light. Press **MSG**. At the “Enable Approach” prompt, press **ENT**.

```
ENABLE APPROACH?
```



2. Select the barometric pressure for the local altimeter setting with the **Small** knob and press **ENT**.

ENTER  
LOCAL ALTIMETER  
SETTING 29.92"

### **Point A (Between *PARMO IAF* and *BO FAF*)**

1. The Approach Active annunciator will flash at 3 nm inbound. The CDI sensitivity begins to scale at 2 nm inbound.
2. Verify that the Approach Active annunciator lights at BO. Verify that the OBS/HLD annunciator is lighted at BO.

### **Point B (Nearing MAP)**

Fly the final approach and descend to MDA.

### **Point C (Missed Approach)**

1. When the decision has been made to execute the published missed approach, press **OBS/HLD**. The active waypoint will become BO (Missed Approach Point). The CDI will gradually scale out to 1.0 nm full-scale deflection. The OBS/HLD annunciator, after turning off briefly, will turn back on as BO (now the Missed Approach Hold Point), is an automatic holding waypoint.

2. Now press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Select 105° with the **Small** knob as the desired inbound course and press **ENT**. The CDI will indicate FROM and will provide guidance on the 105° outbound radial as per missed approach instructions.

```
OBS DTK: 105°
TO OED
BRG 162 DTK 162
```

3. When you reach 3900', begin the climbing right turn.
4. When you reach 4200' or when your bearing to BO matches your current heading, press **DIRECT-TO** and then **ENT**. This will establish a new inbound course direct to BO.

```
NDB BO
USTIK (BOISE)
FACIL ID USA
```

### **Point D (Inbound to BO)**

Fly inbound on the new direct course to BO. The OBS/HLD annunciator will remain lighted.

### **Point E (Missed Approach Hold Point)**

As you pass BO, establish the new inbound holding course and enter the hold. Press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Select an OBS DTK of 098° with the **Large** and **Small** knobs. Press **ENT**.

### **Note**

*If you want to reshoot the approach following your missed approach hold, reactivate the flight plan leg from PARMO (IAF) to BO (FAF) or select DIRECT-TO PARMO (IAF) as appropriate.*

Reproduced with permission of JeppesenSanderson Inc.  
 Reduced for illustrative purposes.

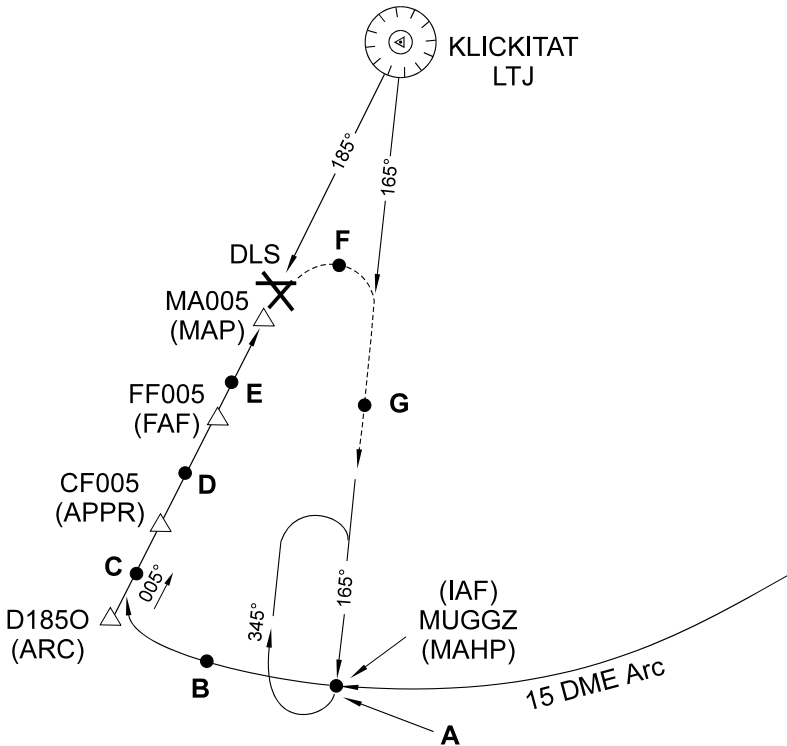


## Example 4

This example for the VORDME A:MUGGZ approach uses a flight plan with the last two waypoints as VOR IMB (Kimberly, Oregon) to The Dalles, Oregon (DLS). This example is used because the step down fixes are referenced to a VOR that is not co-located with the MAP and because of the published missed approach instructions.

### Illustration Points

- A - Approaching MUGGZ (IAF)
- B - On the DME Arc between MUGGZ and D185O (ARC)
- C - Inbound between D185O and CF005 (APPR)
- D - Between CF005 and FF005 (FAF)
- E - Between FF005 and MA005 (MAP)
- F - Turning to intercept 165° to MUGGZ
- G - Inbound to MUGGZ (MAHP)
- H - In the holding pattern at MUGGZ



En Route

1. Create a flight plan named “Example4” with The Dalles, Oregon (DLS) as the destination airport.
2. Activate the flight plan. Press **FPL**. Turn the **Large** knob to display the “Example4” flight plan. Press **SEL** and then **ENT**.

```
EXAMPLE4 147NM
DEST WPT: DLS
ACTIVATE?
```

3. Load the VOR DME A approach to DLS. In flight plan mode, press **SEL**. The display will flash “Load Approach?” Press **ENT**. Select “VORDME A:MUGGZ” with the **Small** knob and press **ENT**.

```
EXAMPLE4 147NM
VORDME A:MUGGZ
APPROACH: DLS
```

## Point A (Near MUGGZ)

1. As you approach MUGGZ (the IAF), verify that your DME-Arc reference is the Klickitat VOR (LTJ). Press **NAV** and then turn the **Large** knob to reach the Arc Assist page.

```
ACR ASSIST
REF: IMB VOR
PRESS ENT OR SEL
```

2. If the reference VOR is LTJ, press **ENT**. If the reference is not LTJ, press **SEL** and select the LTJ VOR and then press **ENT**.

```
LEFT ARC DTK 031
REF: LTJ VOR
RAD 121° 84.1NM
```

### Note

*Always suspend sequencing before manually activating an inbound leg to intercept with a DME Arc if you are already on the FROM side of that leg. This ensures that the flight plan will not sequence if you are currently at a point on the arc that is past the TO waypoint on the leg that you are manually selecting. Re-enable sequencing when you are established on the inbound path. Although this is only necessary if you have a present position on the FROM side of the leg, it doesn't hurt to always do this step, and may help you to remember it when required.*

3. Use the Arc Assist page as the primary guidance for flying the DME Arc and manually activate the inbound leg. Press **FPL** to reach Flight plan. Turn the **Large** knob if necessary to reach the active flight plan. Turn the **Small** knob to display the “D1850 to CF005” display.

```
D1850 TO CF005
4* 009° 3.0NM
ARC APPR
```

4. Press **ENT** to start manual leg selection. Press **ENT** to accept the displayed leg.

```
D1850 TO CF005
PRESS ENT
TO ACTIVATE LEG
```

5. Turn the **Large** knob to the Arc Assist page.

### **Point B (On the arc between MUGGZ and D1850.**

1. Make sure that you are viewing the “Right” Arc Assist page. Turn the **Small** knob, if necessary.

```
RIGHT ARC DTK 270
REF: LTJ VOR
RAD 180° 16.1NM
```

2. Use the Arc Assist page and your aircraft heading display to navigate to the selected inbound leg. The Desired Track (DTK) is your tangent to the arc on your present radial. For the right turn arc in this example, there are no other Arc waypoints to identify. If there were more waypoints, the Arc Assist page will continuously show the radial and distance from the Arc Reference making them easy to identify from your approach chart.



3. As you approach your selected inbound course, your CDI will begin to center to indicate when you intercept the selected inbound leg. As you intercept your inbound course, transition to the CDI as your primary navigation display.

### **Point C (Inbound between D1850 and CF005)**

1. As you become established inbound, return the Apollo NMS display to the primary navigation page and reenable flight plan sequencing. Press **NAV** twice or turn the **Large** knob until you display your primary NAV page.
2. Press **OBS/HLD** to reenable flight plan sequencing, if you suspended it prior to activating the inbound leg.

### **Point D (Between CF005 to FF005)**

1. Note that the flight plan waypoints used as step-down fixes are depicted on the Jeppesen Approach Plate, but not on the NOS charts.
2. If you are using an NOS chart, you must identify the waypoints on the chart by looking at the distances between them on the vertical profile. You may want to view the Arc Assist page to show your distance relative to LJT.

3. As soon as FF005, the FAF becomes the active waypoint. The Approach Active light will begin flashing and the CDI will begin scaling to approach sensitivity, as you will be within 2 nm of the FAF when it becomes active.
4. As you cross FF005, verify that the Approach Active annunciator is lighted indicating that you may continue the approach.

### **Point E (Between FF005 and MA005)**

1. Continue to the Missed Approach Point (MA005).
2. Verify that the OBS/HLD and Approach Active annunciators are lighted.

### **Point F (Turning to intercept 165° to MUGGZ)**

1. When you reach the Missed Approach Point and you wish to fly the published Missed Approach procedure, press **OBS/HLD** as you start your climbing right turn.
2. The CDI will scale back to Approach Transition CDI sensitivity. The MAP (MUGGZ) will become the active waypoint.
3. Select a 165° inbound course to MUGGZ. Press **DIRECT-TO** twice. Turn the **Large** and **Small** knobs to select 165° and then press **ENT**.

### Note

*We are selecting an inbound course to MUGGZ rather than an outbound course from the LTJ VOR.*



*With RNAV-type equipment, such as GPS, there could be several degrees difference in the course between LTJ and MUGGZ than the one published on the chart. The 165° inbound to MUGGZ will get us to MUGGZ more precisely than the 165° outbound from LTJ.*

4. MUGGZ should automatically be noted as a holding waypoint as it is a Missed Approach Hold Point (MAHP). Verify that the OBS/HLD annunciator is lighted.

### Point G (Inbound to MUGGZ)

1. As we already have selected 165° as the inbound to MUGGZ and sequencing is suspended, we are set up for the hold.
2. Enter and fly the published holding pattern just as you would if MUGGZ was a VOR and you had selected 165° on your OBS.

### Point H (Holding Pattern)

Fly the holding pattern.

### Note

*If you are going to reshoot the approach, select MUGGZ as the IAF in your approach sequence again. While holding at MUGGZ (MAHP), press **FPL**, turn to the leg **IMB (VOR)-to-MUGGZ (IAF)**.*



*Press **DIRECT-TO** and then **ENT**. MUGGZ will remain the active waypoint and sequencing is still suspended, but now you are holding at MUGGZ (IAF). If your course to MUGGZ is not exactly 165° TO, reset it. Press **DIRECT-TO** twice, set the OBS to 165°, and press **ENT**.*

## Notes

# Introduction to Primary Oceanic/Remote Airspaces

## What is Primary Oceanic?

Primary Oceanic/Remote airspace operations refers to the equipment's ability to provide navigation and integrity monitoring functions described in FAA Notice N8110.60. This means that the NMC and its GPS sensor are continuously monitoring GPS satellite integrity and automatically remove a satellite from position calculations if it is determined to be faulty. Under TSO-C129a, the sensor also monitors satellite signals more closely than before.

The TSO-C129a requirements for satellite health monitoring are generally similar to those of N8110.60 with the additional capability included of allowing you to exclude satellites from the RAIM Prediction function based on information provided in NOTAMs (Notice To AirMen) and NANUs (Notice Advisory to NAVSTAR Users).

This section describes the operating modifications to the Apollo 2001/2101 NMC to implement Primary Oceanic/Remote Airspace operation requirements. The Oceanic/Remote flight phase is in addition to the currently provided En Route, Terminal, and Approach flight phases and is used for primary navigation in oceanic and/or remote airspaces.

## Definitions

The following paragraphs define various terms that relate to the NMC's primary oceanic/remote airspace operation.

**Arm(ing)(ed):** The manual entry sequence you use to instruct the NMC to change to the oceanic/remote flight phase when the aircraft is outside terminal airspace (30 nm from the departure or destination waypoint) and above the Oceanic Activation Altitude. You may arm the oceanic/remote function at any time and any altitude, provided there are at least two waypoints in the active flight plan. You may adjust the activation altitude. When armed, the NMC is not providing navigation in the oceanic/remote flight phase, but is monitoring the distance from departure (and destination) waypoint and altitude.

**Active:** The NMC is in an active state when it is navigating in the oceanic/remote flight phase. This occurs when the aircraft is outside terminal airspace and above the Oceanic Activation Altitude. The oceanic/remote function must be armed before it can become active.

### NOTE



*If the oceanic/remote function is armed outside of terminal airspace and above the Oceanic Activation Altitude, the NMC will immediately transition to the active state.*

**Activate:** Refers to the NMC action that changes the state from armed to active and changes the flight phase to the oceanic/remote flight phase.

**Cancel(ing):** The manual entry sequence you use to instruct the NMC to do the following depending on which state it is in:

1. If the NMC is in the armed state, canceling changes the state to disarmed. In other words, you instruct the NMC never change to the oceanic/remote flight phase. The NMC will continue with the current flight phase (terminal or enroute).
2. If the NMC is in the active state, canceling changes the state to disarmed. This causes the NMC to stop flying the oceanic/remote flight phase and change to the enroute flight phase (the NMC automatically changes to the terminal flight phase when entering terminal airspace).

**Deactivate:** The NMC's action that changes the state from active to armed and stops flying in the oceanic/remote flight phase.

### NOTE



*The NMC changes states from active to armed automatically if the aircraft enters terminal airspace. In this case, the NMC will change to the terminal flight phase.*

### NOTE



*The NMC changes states from active to armed if you press ENT when the message indicating you have descended below the activation altitude is displayed. The NMC will continue to provide navigation in the Oceanic flight phase if you press any other button. For example, you are flying above the Oceanic Activation Altitude and outside your destination's terminal airspace. You then begin your descent and your altitude drops below the Oceanic Activation Altitude before entering terminal airspace. In this case the NMC will display a message indicating that you have descended below the Oceanic Activation Altitude. You then press the ENT key. The NMC changes to the enroute flight phase. Because you*

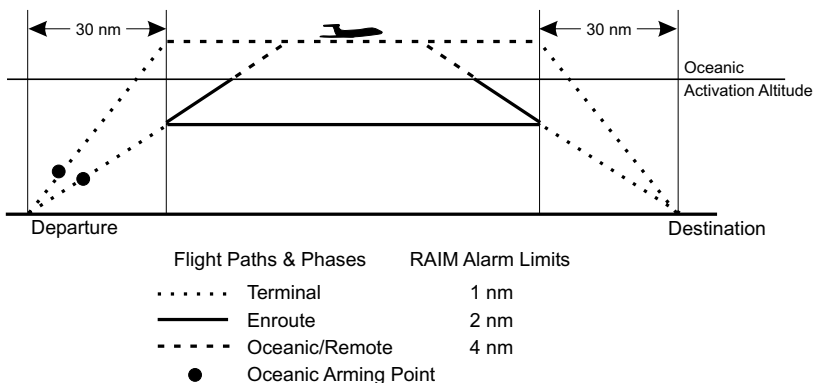
*haven't canceled oceanic/remote operation, the NMC will change to the armed state. If you then climb above the Oceanic Activation Altitude while still outside terminal airspace, the NMC will change back to the active state and the oceanic/remote flight phase.*

**Disarm(ed):** The NMC's state when it is not monitoring distance and altitude (for the purposes of oceanic/remote flight) and will not transition to the oceanic/remote flight phase.

**Position Uncertainty:** The distance from the reported position to your actual position. This distance is reported on the Oceanic Status page when in the oceanic/remote flight phase, there is a RAIM alarm, and there are enough satellites to calculate it. You are assured that your actual position is within the displayed distance from your reported position. If there are not enough satellites to compute the distance, the position uncertainty will be reported as "Not Available".

As the operator of the NMC, you can only arm or cancel the oceanic/remote mode of operation. The NMC does the rest.

The diagram below illustrates the different NMC flight phases (except approach) and their relationship for flight through terminal, en route, and oceanic/remote airspace. The diagram shows the NMC was armed before leaving terminal airspace and below the Oceanic Activation Altitude.



Other terminology related to TSO-C129a are:

**PRN:** GPS satellite Pseudo-Random Numbers used to uniquely identify satellites. This is different than the SVN (Space Vehicle Number, or the satellites serial number). The RAIM Prediction Ignore List (RPIL) pages display the PRN number for each satellite. When excluding satellites from the RAIM Prediction, use the PRN number found on the NOTAMs and NANUs, not the SVN.

Also on the RPIL pages are the field titles FR: and TO:. FR: refers to the time when the satellite is expected to go out of service. TO: refers to the time when the satellite is expected to be back in service. NOTAMs and NANUs will indicate satellite outages in the following formats:

- 1.PRNxx will be out of service FROM a date and time TO a date and time.
- 2.PRNxx will be out of service FROM a date and time for hh hours.
- 3.PRNxx will be out of service indefinitely FROM a date and time.

The RPIL pages permit you to specify satellite outages in any of these formats.



# RAIM

## What Is Raim?

RAIM stands for Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitor. It is a way a GPS receiver can detect when the signals it is receiving from one or more of the satellites are wrong. It does this by using more satellites than are required for a position solution. In essence, the receiver compares the pseudo-ranges, or calculated distance measurements, from the satellites against what it expects. If this comparison yields too big a value, based on the current RAIM alarm limit, an Alarm is generated and you get a message telling you that a RAIM alarm has occurred.

It is important to understand that RAIM provides integrity, not accuracy. Accuracy is the ability of the GPS to determine a correct position with good satellite signals, enough satellites in view, and an acceptable geometric position of the available satellites. Integrity is the ability of the GPS system to detect when its position may not be accurate due to bad or false satellite information.

GPS systems limited to VFR use must meet the exact same accuracy requirements as those authorized for IFR use. Systems authorized for IFR use must also have an integrity monitor such as RAIM.

## How Is Raim Used?

TSO C129a calls for three different levels of RAIM protection: En route, Terminal, and Approach. Plus, the receiver has the ability to predict RAIM availability at any given location and time.

## Why predict availability?

Because RAIM requires that more satellites be used than are required for a position solution, RAIM may not always be available. The TSO requires that RAIM be available with a 0.3 nm. alarm limit, from a distance of 2 nm inbound to the Final Approach Fix (FAF) until the Missed Approach Point (MAP) is reached. A means must be provided to allow the pilot to predict whether RAIM will be available at the estimated time of arrival at the destination. Your Apollo NMS provides you with a RAIM prediction page. This page allows you to determine if RAIM should be available at any location and time. If it

says RAIM will be available, it actually means that it will be available at your predicted time of arrival and plus and minus 15 minutes from your arrival time calculated at 5 minute intervals.

RAIM prediction is required to be done automatically by the equipment for the estimated time of arrival at the FAF and the MAP when you are 3 nm inbound to the FAF. On your Apollo NMS, the system will not go to the approach active state at the FAF and the Approach Active annunciator will not come on if approach RAIM is not available or if it has been predicted to become unavailable while you are between the FAF and the MAP.

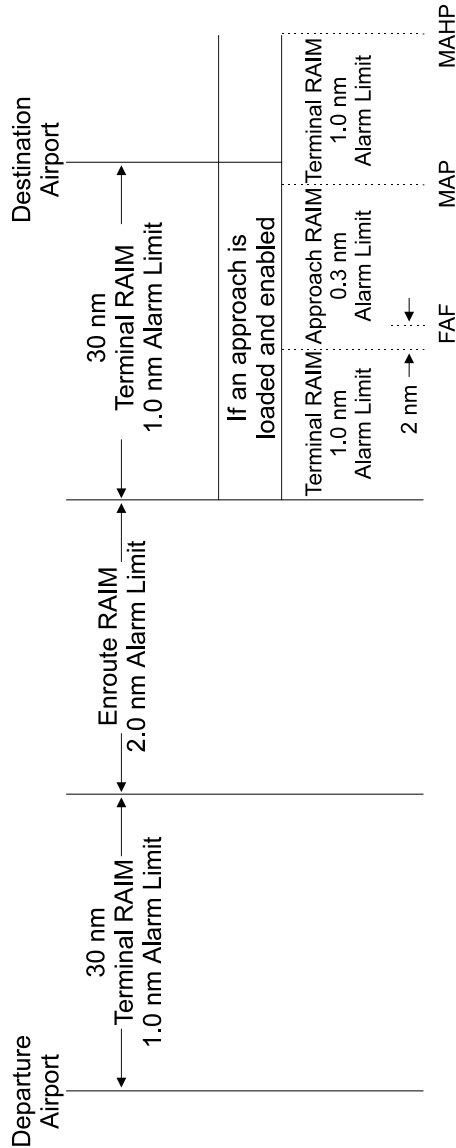
TSO C129a requires the RAIM alarm limit to be at least 2.0 nm for en route operations, 1.0 nm for Terminal operations, and 0.3 nm for Approach operations.

### **What are En Route, Terminal, and Approach Operations?**

Approach RAIM, or 0.3 nm alarm limit, is provided from 2.0 nm inbound to the FAF until you cancel the Approach Active operation (usually at the MAP). Approach RAIM is provided only if an approach is loaded into your active flight plan and it is enabled.

Terminal RAIM, or 1.0 nm alarm limit is provided within 30 nm of your departure and your destination airport (except when Approach RAIM is provided). This is automatic and requires no pilot action. For those of you who are familiar with the traditional definition of Terminal, which was the ability to operate on SIDs and STARs that are only 4 nm wide, the term Terminal has been “redefined” in TSO C129a to mean within 30 nm of your departure or destination.

En route RAIM, or a 2.0 nm alarm limit is provided at all other times.



Note that the three different equipment operation states: En route, Approach-Transition, and Approach-Active are somewhat but not directly related to the three RAIM alarm limits of En route, Terminal, and Approach. The equipment states are defined by the CDI sensitivity and operational requirements. When you depart an airport, the equipment is operating En route, but it is providing Terminal RAIM integrity. When you reach a point 30 nm from your destination airport,

the Apollo NMS will automatically switch to Terminal RAIM integrity, but you will be prompted to enable your approach and thus transition to the Approach-Transition CDI scale only if you have an approach loaded into your active flight plan. If you have an approach loaded and enabled, the Apollo NMS will provide Approach RAIM integrity starting 2 nm from the FAF. Approach-Active operation, which requires both that Approach RAIM and Approach CDI sensitivity be provided, begins at the FAF and is indicated by the Approach Active annunciator on solid.

This may seem very confusing, but operationally, the Apollo NMS makes it very simple. If the Approach Active annunciator comes on solid at the FAF, then it is OK to continue the approach. If it does not come on solid at the FAF, discontinue the approach. You will get a message telling you what operational or integrity requirement was not OK.

### **How often will RAIM be unavailable?**

RAIM availability depends on many factors, including the number of operational satellites in the sky, the time of day, the location, the receiver design, the antenna mask angle and location, and on the method of baro-aiding. The Apollo NMS has been designed such that with an optimal 21 satellites in operation, Approach RAIM availability should exceed 95%. There are currently, at the time this manual was published, at least 24 satellites in operation; however, the Federal Navigation Radio Plan only guarantees that there is at least a 95% probability that 21 will be operational at any given time.

### **What is baro-aiding?**

Baro-aiding is required by TSO C129a to enhance RAIM availability. It is a method where pressure altitude data can be used to provide RAIM availability during some times when RAIM would not be available using the satellites alone. This is the reason that TSO C129a GPS installations are required to have pressure altitude inputs.

### **What does it mean when I get a “RAIM not available” message?**

If RAIM is not available, your Apollo NMS may be capable of continuing to provide good accurate IFR navigation. What you have lost is the ability to tell if a satellite is sending bad data. For all operations except Approach, the FAA has determined that it is

acceptable for you to continue to use GPS for IFR navigation as long as you verify the accuracy of your position by other means at least every 15 minutes until RAIM becomes available again. This can be accomplished by cross-checking your GPS position against that of other navigation instruments. Even during times of no RAIM, if your Apollo GPS determines that it can not provide an accurate position due to poor satellite availability or geometry, it will flag the navigation display as invalid. If the Apollo NMS is providing valid navigation data, then it is still capable of providing good IFR navigation as long as the satellite data is good.

During Approach operations, if you lose RAIM availability, your Apollo NMS will continue to provide navigation data; however, your navigation display will be flagged as invalid. You should discontinue the approach and revert to other means of navigation. It should be noted that even if this were to occur, canceling Approach-Active, by pressing the OBS/HLD button, will result in an immediate transition to Terminal RAIM from Approach RAIM. Terminal RAIM integrity may still be available even when Approach RAIM integrity is not. If so, your navigation display will again become valid, and you may continue to use the Apollo GPS for missed approach navigation.

### **What does a RAIM alarm mean?**

A RAIM alarm means that the navigation data can not be trusted to be within the alarm limit. A RAIM alarm means that the Apollo NMS has determined that there is something wrong with the data it is receiving from one or more satellites. The data may be corrupted by a satellite failure, such as a clock failure, or it may have been corrupted by some form of signal interference. A RAIM alarm will also be accompanied by flagging all navigational displays as invalid. If you should ever see a RAIM alarm, do not trust the GPS position, and revert to other means of navigation as appropriate.

### **How often do satellite failures occur?**

There is not enough data to provide a good answer; however, it is known that they can and do happen. Satellite clock failures, one of the more probable failures, is more likely to occur on the older Block-I satellites, but this does not mean that it can't happen on the newer ones. When a satellite failure does happen, it can result in undetected error of miles in the position if a receiver is using the failed satellite in its navigation solution.

When a satellite fails, even if that failure is detected by an earth-based monitoring station, it can be some time before an uplink to that satellite can occur. During that time, there is no way for a GPS receiver to know that the information from that satellite is bad directly from that satellite's transmissions. An integrity monitor, such as RAIM when it is available, protects you from false or misleading navigation displays resulting from bad satellite information.

## Approach Questions and Answers

How do I check to see what I entered for an inbound course (OBS/HLD)?

There are two ways to check this. One way is to press **FPL** to enter flight plan mode. Turn the **Small** knob until the active leg is displayed (denoted by two asterisks on the leg). The displayed desired-track is what was entered as the “OBS” course when leg sequencing is suspended.

The second way is to press **DIRECT-TO** twice as if you are going to enter the inbound course again. The displayed value will be whatever you last selected.

What do I do if on a procedure turn or holding pattern entry I forgot to set a new OBS/HLD inbound course after first crossing the waypoint and the flight plan sequences to the next waypoint as soon as I re-enable sequencing?

1. Press **OBS/HLD** to disable sequencing.
2. Press **FPL**. Then, turn the **Small** knob to show the waypoint you want active on the TO side.
3. Press **ENT** twice to select the desired leg.
4. Remember to press **OBS/HLD** to re-enable sequencing when established inbound.

Why do I sometimes see several degrees difference in what the Apollo NMS shows as the course for a leg and what is on the published approach chart.

There are two main reasons: station declination and airway definition. The VOR station magnetic declination setting may not be current and will provide slightly differing readings compared to your actual magnetic course. Airways are defined by constant bearing To or From VOR stations while GPS navigation is based on the great circle route between the

stations. In great circle navigation, your bearing will change as you move along the course. This is more evident over longer distances. To illustrate this, stretch a string or rubber band over a globe between Seattle and Tokyo. This string represents the great circle route. Note that as you leave Seattle you must travel northwest and as you approach Tokyo you must travel southwest.

The effect of these small discrepancies is generally negligible over the relatively short distances used for most flight legs that you will navigate.

What if I manually activate a leg and it immediately sequences to a new leg?

This will happen if you were on the FROM side of the leg when you activated it if you did not press OBS/HLD first to disable sequencing.

Press OBS/HLD and activate the leg again. Re-enable sequencing when you intercept the leg.



# Troubleshooting

## To Ensure Trouble Free Operation

Avoid high cockpit temperatures when the aircraft is not in use. Extreme heat shortens the life of any electronic equipment. Periodically check all antenna, power, and ground connections.

### Caution

*DO NOT clean the face plate with chemical cleaning agents, solvents, or harsh detergents. A soft cloth may be used to clean the face plate. DO NOT wax or paint the antenna.*

## Battery Replacement

The NMC memory is maintained by a lithium battery. The expected service life of this type of battery is from 5 to 10 years. This is not a user replaceable item. The lithium battery must be replaced by the factory, an authorized dealer, or service center.

## If You Have A Problem

Please read the instructions again for the desired function.

## If You Are Unable To Correct The Problem

Record as much information as possible, such as where and when the problem occurred, symptoms, and your actions. Record the position sensor data (displayed in SYS mode) for ALL satellites (GPS) or stations in the chain (Loran) used, and call your II Morrow dealer, Service Center, or the factory. The technician **MUST** have this information to help you solve the problem.

**In-Flight**

**Indication**

MSG light is on.  
 Displayed message is:  
 LORAN1 [or 2]  
 STATIONS HAVE  
 LOW SNR

**Problem**

If flying through clouds, rain, snow, etc., the likely problem is precipitation static (P-STAT).

**Action**

After landing inspect (or install) static wicks per aircraft manufacturers specifications. Also, check the static bonding straps on all control surfaces. If the problem continues, skin mapping may be necessary.

---

**Indication**

(Same as above).

**Problem**

The aircraft is flying out of the coverage area for the selected chain.

**Action**

Use Auto GRI, or manually select a new GRI.

---

**Indication**

(Same as above).

**Problem**

If the MSG light comes on and stays on after takeoff, or run-up, noise from the aircraft alternator or magneto may be responsible.

**Action**

Contact the dealer or factory.

---

**In-Flight (continued)****Indication**

MSG light is on.  
 Displayed message is:  
 LORAN1 [or 2]  
     STATIONS HAVE  
     SIGNAL BLINK

**Problem**

If the Loran sensor is selected as the in-use position sensor, a blink condition is occurring. This is a signal generated by the operator of the transmitter indicating a temporary technical problem with the transmitted signal.

**Action**

Signal information appears normal. The MSG clears when the problem clears.

---

**Indication**

MSG light is on.  
 Displayed message is:  
 LORAN1 [or 2]  
     TD SENSOR 1 [or 2]  
     FAILURE

**Problem**

The Loran TD sensor has failed.

**Action**

Return MCLS for service.

---

**Indication**

Bearing and distance displays appear to be wrong.

**Problem**

A mistake was made in entering the Latitude/Longitude coordinates of a User waypoint, or the wrong waypoint is selected.

**Action**

Verify that coordinates of the User waypoint are accurate. Check the hemispheric identifier. Check the “From” and “To” waypoints.

Verify that “ManualMagVar” has not been selected and set to an incorrect value.

---

**In-Flight (continued)**

Hint

Verify your position by activating the Emergency Search Listing. The correct bearing/distance to the nearest airports should be displayed.

**On The Ground**

|                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Indication</b></p> <p>MSG light stays on after power-up.<br/>Displayed message is:<br/>LORAN1<br/>STATIONS<br/>HAVE<br/>LOW SNR</p> | <p><b>Problem</b></p> <p>The wrong Loran GRI is manually selected.</p> <p><b>Action</b></p> <p>Use Auto GRI, or manually select an appropriate GRI.</p> <hr/>                          |
| <p><b>Indication</b></p> <p>(Same as above).</p>                                                                                          | <p><b>Problem</b></p> <p>Required secondary is shut down.</p> <p><b>Action</b></p> <p>Check Loran signals in SYS mode to see if unit is receiving signals from each station.</p> <hr/> |
| <p><b>Indication</b></p> <p>(Same as above).</p>                                                                                          | <p><b>Problem</b></p> <p>Signal is weak due to distance from transmitters.</p> <p><b>Action</b></p> <p>You may not obtain lock-on until after takeoff.</p> <hr/>                       |

### On The Ground (continued)

| <b>Indication</b>                                                                                                      | <b>Problem</b>                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MSG light stays on<br>after power-up.<br>Displayed message is:<br>LORAN1<br>STATIONS<br>HAVE<br>LOW SNR<br>(continued) | Aircraft may be parked near<br>something interfering with the signal<br>(APU, hanger, high-voltage lines). |

#### **Action**

Move the aircraft. The system usually  
 does not work inside a hanger.

---

| <b>Indication</b>                                                                                                        | <b>Problem</b>                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MSG light stays on<br>after power-up.<br>Displayed message is:<br>IN USE POSITION<br>SENSOR CANNOT<br>COMPUTE<br>LAT/LON | The In-Use position sensor is not able<br>to calculate a position |

#### **Action**

Select a different position sensor.

---

| <b>Indication</b>                                                                                            | <b>Problem</b>                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| MSG light is on after<br>run-up. Displayed<br>Message is:<br>LORAN1[or 2]<br>EST POS ERROR<br>(EPE) IS 1.8NM | Noise generated from the aircraft<br>alternator or magneto. |

#### **Action**

Contact II Morrow dealer or factory.

---

## Contacting the Factory for Assistance

If the unit fails to operate correctly despite troubleshooting efforts, contact the II Morrow factory for assistance. The factory address and phone number are:

II Morrow Inc.  
2345 Turner Road S.E.  
Salem, OR 97302  
U.S.A.  
Phone (503) 581-8101, or 1-800-525-6726

Be prepared to offer the following information about the installation:

system configuration, including number of NMCs, sensor, antennas, etc.

model numbers, part numbers with mod level, and serial numbers

software (SW) version numbers

firmware (FW) version numbers

description of problem

efforts made to isolate the problem

mounting location of each system component

computed lat/long position shown on the NMC

UTC time and date

local time

antenna location

---

# Glossary

- A**    **Activation Altitude:** The selectable altitude at which (if oceanic operation is armed) the NMC will automatically enter the active state and begin navigating in the Oceanic/Remote flight phase.
- Almanac:** Data transmitted by a GPS satellite including orbit information on all satellites, clock correction, and atmospheric delays.
- Altitude (GPS ALT):** Altitude based upon a mathematical model of the earth's surface curvature. A substantial difference between this altitude value and altitude referenced to sea level may exist.
- Approach:** A predefined sequence of waypoints used during approach procedures.
- Approach Active, Approach Active Mode:** The phase of flight used for GPS nonprecision approaches that is concurrent with approach RAIM integrity and full scale deflection at 0.3 nm. During approach active mode, approach is enabled, the MAP is the current TO waypoint, and waypoint sequencing is on HOLD.
- Approach Enabled:** A state that allows automatic transition to approach active mode. When approach is first enabled, the flight mode transitions from terminal to approach transition. Approach can only be enabled when within 30 nm of the destination airport.
- Approach RAIM Integrity:** 0.3 nm RAIM alarm limit.
- Approach Transition, Approach Transition Mode:** Phase of flight concurrent with terminal RAIM integrity and full scale deflection at or transitioning to 1.0 nm. During approach transition mode, approach is enable.
- Approach Waypoint:** A waypoint that is part of a published approach (all waypoints from IAF to the MAHP).

**Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS):**

Recorded information about weather and other conditions at an airport, periodically updated when conditions change.

**Azimuth:** The horizontal bearing, as measured clockwise from true or magnetic north.

**B Bearing (BRG):** The direction to any point, usually measured in degrees relative to true or magnetic north.

**C Constellation:** A group of stars or objects, such as GPS satellites, in the heavens.

**Coordinates:** Values for latitude and longitude that describe a geographical point on the surface of the earth.

**Course:** The planned direction of travel in a horizontal plane.

**Course Deviation:** A measurement of distance left or right from the desired course of travel.

**Course Deviation Indicator (CDI):** A graphic indicator of course deviation typically shown as a graduated horizontal bar with an icon indicating the deviation distance left or right of course.

**Common Traffic Advisory Frequency (CTAF)**

**D Database:** A collection of data structured in such a way as to allow quick and convenient access to any particular record or records. The NMC contains a built-in database of waypoints and waypoint information. Users may add waypoints to this database.

**Degree:** 1/360th of a circle.

**Departure:** The first waypoint in the active route.

**Desired Track (DTK):** The desired course of navigation between a point of origin and a destination waypoint.

**Destination:** The last waypoint in the active route.

**Dilution of Precision (DOP):** A merit value for the calculated position based on the geometrical configuration of the satellites



used; 3 is considered good, greater than 7 is considered poor. Also called Position Dilution of Precision or PDOP.

**Distance:** A measure of interval in space. Also referred to as range.

**DME:** Distance Measuring Equipment

**Drift:** Displacement from the intended course of travel.

**E** **Elevation:** The angle of a GPS satellite above the horizon. Height above mean sea level.

**En Route EPE:** Loran EPE limit of 2.8 nm.

**Enroute Mode:** The phase of flight when more than 30 nm from departure or destination airport. During en route mode, full scale deflection is at or transitioning to 5.0 nm.

**Enroute RAIM Integrity:** 2.0 nm RAIM alarm limit.

**EPE:** Estimated Precision Error.

**Ephemeris:** A list of accurate positions or locations of a celestial object as a function of time.

**Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA)**

**Estimated Time Enroute (ETE)**

**F** **FAF:** Final Approach Fix.

**Fix:** A geographical location determined by either visual reference or by electronic navigation aids.

**G** **GDOP:** Geometric Dilution of Precision. The relationship between errors in receiver position and time and in satellite range.

**Global Positioning System (GPS):** Also known as NAVSTAR. A constellation of satellites launched by the U.S. Department of Defense into six orbit lanes (four satellites per plane) at an altitude of 10,898 nm above the earth.

**Greenwich Mean Time (GMT):** See Universal Time Coordinate (UTC).

**Ground (GRND):** Ground communication frequency

**Ground Speed (GS):** Speed of travel across the ground. In aviation, the relation between ground speed and air speed is affected by the prevailing winds.

**H HDOP:** Horizontal Dilution of Precision.

**I IAF:** Initial Approach Fix.

**IFAF:** A point that exists as a combined IAF and FAF.

**Identifier:** A name, typically abbreviated, assigned to a waypoint. The identifier may consist of numbers and alpha characters, up to six in length. For example, the airport identifier for Los Angeles International Airport is LAX.

**Instrument Flight Rules (IFR)**

**Intersection (INT):** A point defined by any combination of courses, radials, or bearings of two or more navigational aids.

**K Knot (kt):** A unit of speed equal to one nautical mile per hour.

**L Latitude (Lat):** Any line circling the earth parallel to the equator, measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds north and south of the equator.

**Longitude (Lon):** Any line from the north to the south pole, measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds of a circle, east or west of the Prime Meridian (Greenwich, England).

**M Magnetic North:** The region, some distance from the geographic north pole where the earth's magnetic lines concentrate. A magnetic compass points to the magnetic north.

**Magnetic Variation (Mag Var):** The angle between the magnetic and true north. At various points on the earth it is different due to local magnetic disturbances. It is shown on charts as isogonic lines marked with degrees of variation, either east or west. These degrees must be added to or subtracted from the true course to get the magnetic course. (Easterly variations are deducted, and westerly variations are added.)

**Map Datum:** A mathematical model of the earth used for the purpose of creating navigation charts and maps.

**Meter (m):** A metric distance measurement equal to 39.37 inches.

**Minute:** 1/60th of a degree.

**MAHP:** Missed Approach Hold Point.

**MAP:** Missed Approach Point.

**MCLS:** Multi-Chain Loran Sensor

**MESA:** Minimum Enroute Safe Altitude is the highest MSA for every point between the aircraft present position and the “TO” waypoint with a 5 nm buffer around the course.

**MSA:** Minimum Safe Altitude is the elevation of the highest obstruction near the aircraft plus a 1,000 or 2,000 foot buffer added for safety. In non-mountainous terrain, a 1,000 foot buffer is added. In mountainous terrain, a 2,000 foot buffer is added. The result is rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

**N**     **NANU:** Notice Advisory to NAVSTAR Users.

**Nautical Mile (nm):** A distance measurement equal to 6,076 feet, or 1.15 statute mile. One nautical mile is also equal to one minute of latitude.

**NAVSTAR:** The name given to GPS satellites formed from the acronym for **NAV**igation **S**ystem with **T**ime **A**nd **R**anging.

**Non-Directional Beacon (NDB):** A low frequency/medium frequency navigation aid sending non-directional signals that can be used for navigation.

**Non-Sequenced Waypoint:** Any waypoint that is not part of a predefined sequence of waypoints belonging to an approach.

**NOTAM:** Notice to Airmen.

**P**     **PDOP:** Position Dilution of Precision. A description of the merit of position quality expressing the relationship between the error in user position and the error in satellite position. Values considered good for positioning are small, such as 3. Values greater than 7 are considered poor.

**Position Uncertainty:** The maximum distance from the reported position to your actual position. This is reported on the Oceanic Status page when in the oceanic/remote flight phase, there is a RAIM alarm, and there are enough satellites to calculate it. You are assured that your actual position is within the displayed distance from your reported position.

**Primary Oceanic/Remote Airspace Operations:** The NMC and its GPS sensor continuously monitor GPS satellite integrity and automatically remove a satellite from position calculations if it is determined to be faulty in accordance with FAA Notice N8110.60

**PRN:** Pseudo-Random Numbers used to uniquely identify satellites. This is different than the SVN (Space Vehicle Number) or the satellite serial number.

**R Radial:** Any of the 360 magnetic courses from a VOR or similar navigational aid, beginning at the navigational aid and proceeding outward in a straight line.

**RAIM:** Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring. A method of predicting possible system accuracy errors that may be caused by bad satellite data. The RAIM algorithm requires that more satellites are available and usable than required for a normal GPS position fix.

**RAIM Alarm:** A signal that, with RAIM available, RAIM integrity for the current flight mode is exceeded.

**RAIM Alarm Limit:** The maximum RAIM integrity value for the current phase of flight. The accuracy tolerance used by the RAIM algorithm. The limit is set at 2 nm for Enroute and Oceanic operations, 1 nm for Terminal operations, and 0.3 nm for Approach operations.

**RAIM Availability, RAIM Detection:** Availability of five groups of four satellites, with adequate geometry, to provide RAIM.

**RAIM Integrity:** A measurement based on RAIM calculations of the probability of error in the position solution.

**Range (RNG):** The distance from the present position to a destination waypoint.

**RPIL:** RAIM Predict Ignore List. List of expected satellite outages.

**S**     **Second:** 1/60th of a minute of a degree.

**Seed Position:** A latitude and longitude position fix approximately equal to the current position that the NMC uses to determine the location of available satellites from which signals may be received.

**Selective Availability (SA):** The degradation of accuracy of GPS position fix data by the United States Department of Defense for civilian use.

**SID:** Standard Instrument Departure: A predefined sequence of waypoints used during departure procedures.

**Space Vehicle (SV):** A GPS satellite.

**STAR:** Standard Terminal Arrival Route. A predefined sequence of waypoints used before arrival procedures.

**Statute Mile:** A distance measurement equal to 5,280 feet or 0.87 of a nautical mile.

**T**     **Terminal EPE:** Loran EPE limit of 1.7 nm.

**Terminal Operations:** The phase of flight within 30 nm of the departure airport or the destination airport when approach is not enabled. During terminal operations, terminal RAIM integrity is used. For Loran, terminal EPE applies.

**Terminal RAIM Integrity:** 1.0 nm RAIM alarm limit.

**Three-dimensional (3D) Position Fix:** A position fix defined by latitude, longitude, and altitude.

**Track (TRK):** The imaginary line that the flight path of an airplane makes over the earth.

**Track Angle Error (TAE):** the absolute value of the DTK minus the TRK.

**TRU:** True outside air temperature.

**True North:** Geographic north, at the earth's north pole.

**Tower (TWR):** Airport tower communication frequency

**U UNICOM:** The radio frequencies assigned to aeronautical advisory stations for communication with aircraft. Unicoms may provide such airport information as active runway, wind direction and velocity and other conditions of importance to pilots.

**Universal Coordinated Time (UTC):** Greenwich Mean Time, or the time at the Prime Meridian in Greenwich, England. Also referred to as Zulu time.

**UTC Differential:** The difference in time between that at the present position and UTC.

**Universal Transverse Mercator Map Projection System (UTM):** Also known as Military Grid Coordinates, the UTM grid consists of 60 north-south/east-west zones, each six degrees wide in longitude.

**V Very High Frequency Omnidirectional Range (VOR):** A navigational aid that transmits signals such that a receiver can indicate its current radial or bearing from the transmitter.

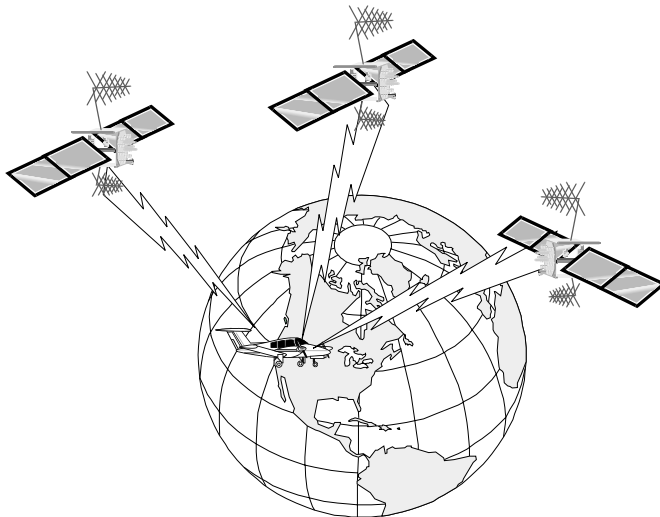
**W Waypoint:** A navigation fix used in area navigation and defined by latitude and longitude coordinates.

# GPS Reference

This section provides an overview of the Global Positioning System (GPS), its limitations, advantages, and special features.

## General Information

GPS, is a constellation of 24 satellites in six lanes with four satellites per plane in 10,898 nm orbits. The orbit period is 12 hours, or two orbits per day. Each satellite transmits a signal with special coding unique to each satellite called a pseudorandom code and allows any GPS receiver to identify each satellite. A precise time mark is provided in the code that is used to determine the range from the satellite to the receiver. Each satellite transmits at the same frequency (1575.42 MHz). The GPS equipment in the Apollo Navigation Management System (NMS) only receives signals. The receiver looks for the satellites by searching for the codes transmitted by each satellite. Each satellite found is used to determine a position solution. An additional satellite is used to determine the time differences between the time of signal transmission and its reception. Each satellite transmits its signal at precisely the same time. Each satellite has two cesium beam clocks on board as a time reference to ensure accurate timing. Knowing the length of time it takes for the signal to reach the GPS receiver allows it to determine the distance to the satellite. This distance is referred to as the range from the satellite.



Using the range from the satellite to the GPS receiver, the location of the receiver is a point somewhere on the surface of a sphere. Adding a third satellite to the equation creates two overlapping spheres placing the location of the GPS receiver on a circle. A fourth satellite narrows the location of the GPS receiver to two points. One location is on or near the surface of the earth. The other position is in the opposite direction in space and is discarded as a solution. The position determined by four satellites provides latitude, longitude, altitude, and time for a three-dimensional (3-D) location or fix.

The exact location of each satellite must be known at any given time. Traveling in a high speed orbit, some satellites will “rise” and some will “set” in relation to the location of the GPS receiver. A general almanac is continuously transmitted from each satellite giving the approximate location of each satellite. It takes about 12-1/2 minutes to acquire all of the almanac data for the entire system. A given set of almanac data is valid for about six months. So, it is possible for a GPS receiver that is new or stored for a long time to take from 12 to 45 minutes to acquire all of the required almanac information the first time it is turned on. If you use your GPS receiver regularly, it should always have a current almanac and you won't have to wait very long. The almanac only provides an approximate location for each satellite so the receiver knows where to begin to look. Information that pinpoints the exact location of the satellite is also transmitted about every 30 seconds. This data is called “ephemeris” data. The ephemeris data is used in the calculation that determines the exact location the satellite.

Because four satellites are needed for a position fix and the satellites are constantly moving, setting, and rising, the ideal receiver would track at least five satellites with channels.

### **Accuracy, Error, and Limitations**

GPS can be very accurate in defining a position fix. Accuracy can however mean many things and depends upon how it is defined. If you only want to know how accurate a system is in two dimensions, you could use the Circular Error Probability (CEP) method. The CEP method gives the diameter of a circle that the receiver will be located in 50% of the time. The Radial Normal Error (1 DRMS) method gives a circle that is large enough that the receiver will be in it 63% to 68% of the time. The 1 DRMS method is more restrictive than the CEP method. A more common method of error measurement is the 2



DRMS method. The 2 DRMS method describes a circle that the receiver must be located in for 95% to 98% of the time and is the most restrictive measurement method.

There are several inherent sources of error in GPS. Some factors are intentional, some are a result of geometry, while others are caused by equipment or natural conditions. One factor in accuracy and error in GPS is the process of "Selective Availability." Two levels of service exist for GPS: Precise Positioning Service (PPS) and Standard Positioning Service (SPS). PPS has the best possible accuracy and is reserved for military use only. SPS was designed for civilian use and, while less accurate than PPS, still has enough accuracy to be of strategic concern to the military. Selective Availability (S/A) is a deliberate introduction of errors. The DoD has stated that these induced errors will be within 100 meters 95% of the time and within 300 meters 99.9% of the time.

Other errors that can degrade the accuracy of GPS are satellite clock error, ephemeris error, ionospheric error, or Geometric Dilution of Precision (GDOP). The atomic clocks used in the satellites are extremely accurate, but because of the large distances involved even a very small error will have an effect on overall accuracy. Clock error can contribute a real distance error of about two feet. Ephemeris information is a prediction of a satellite position in space. The actual position of the satellite might differ slightly and can contribute to an error of about two feet at the GPS receiver. The calculation of distance used to fix a position of a GPS receiver depends on knowing the time it takes for the signal to travel from the satellite to the receiver and the speed of light. The density of the atmosphere affects the speed of light. Ionospheric error is caused by changes in the density and thickness of the ionosphere at different times of the day and year resulting in a possible error of two feet to two hundred feet.

Geometric Dilution of Precision (GDOP) refers to the effect of the geometry of the satellites used to arrive at a position fix. The best possible arrangement of satellites would place one directly overhead with three more spaced 120 degrees apart and very low over the horizon. The perfect arrangement creates the smallest possible area of error. As the actual geometry of the satellites is never ideal, the area of possible error always exists and varies. GDOP is a multiplier of other errors. For example, if the total error due to other causes was five meters and the GDOP was six, the actual error would be 30 meters using the 2

DRMS method. Typically, the accuracy of most good GPS receivers under normal conditions will be within 15 to 30 meters.

### **Position Fix**

A 2D position fix is possible with only three satellites visible. Four satellites are required for a 3D fix and at least five satellites (with good geometry) are required to provide RAIM. Pressure altitude data can sometimes be substituted for the fifth required satellite in order to provide RAIM. Your Apollo NMC allows use of an altitude input to replace one of the required satellites for a position solution. This will yield a 2D, or horizontal, position with only three satellites, but is not as accurate as when four satellites are used. A three-dimensional fix (3D) includes altitude information. GPS altitude is calculated according to an ideal model (WGS-84 spheroid). The GPS altitude is determined by the distance calculated to be the height above an ideal ellipsoid model of the earth designed to closely approximate the surface of the earth. The translation applied to GPS altitude to convert to MSL altitude changes from area to area due to the uneven shape of the earth. The designed accuracy of GPS for civilian-use can have a typical accuracy of 500 feet depending on the cumulative error sources. So, don't depend on your GPS altitude for navigating.

# Apollo NMC Flight Simulator

Your Apollo Navigation Management Computer (NMC) is provided with a Flight Simulation program that allows you to “fly” your unit when it is removed from the aircraft. Using the power supply provided with the unit, you can practice using your Apollo NMC at home, in the office, or anywhere you have an AC outlet. This section describes the procedures used to remove your NMC from the aircraft, run the Flight Simulator, and re-install the NMC.

## About the Flight Simulator

The Flight Simulator is programmed into your NMC at the factory and is activated when the NMC is powered-up using the external power supply (P/N 148-1033).

The NMC “asks” you to input a ground speed and altitude each time it is powered-up using the external power supply. This speed and altitude information will remain constant throughout the simulation. The NMC uses a simulated GPS sensor to provide position, altitude, speed, and course information. As no external sensors are connected while the simulation is running, no information is displayed about external sensors. The simulated altitude does not change while the Flight Simulator is running, so the Altitude Assist functions will show that you are maintaining the entered altitude.

The NMC uses the position of the first FROM waypoint in the Active flight plan as the initial position and simulates flight along the desired track to each successive TO waypoint. While “en route,” the NMC generates updated navigation information and alert messages consistent with the simulated flight path. When the NMC “arrives” at the final waypoint of your flight plan, it stops waypoint sequencing. The NMC continues to simulate flight past the waypoint and provides bearing and distance information to the last TO waypoint.

## NMC Removal (Panel Mount)

The following procedure is used to remove the panel mounted NMC from the aircraft panel. Reverse this procedure to re-install the NMC.

1. Unscrew the two mounting rods under the NMC front panel with the flat blade screwdriver provided (P/N 555-0500). Insert the screwdriver blade into the face plate holes, as shown in Figure 1, to reach the mounting rod screw heads.
2. Pull the unit straight out of the mounting tube.

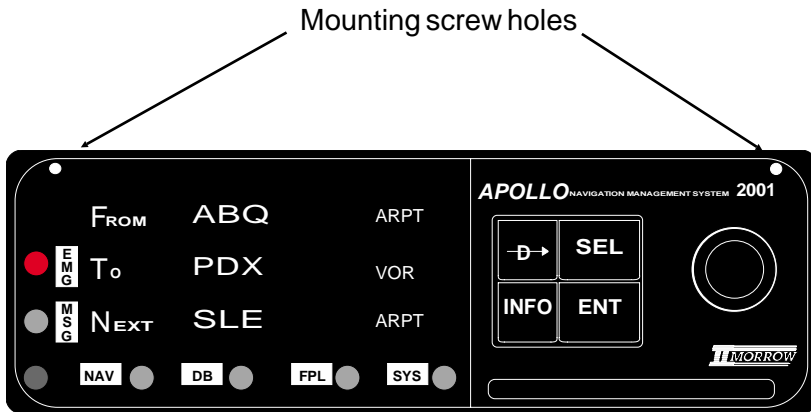


Figure 1 - Apollo NMS Panel Mount

## NMC Removal (Dzus Mount)

The following procedure is used to remove the Dzus mounted NMC from the aircraft panel. Reverse this procedure to re-install the NMC.

1. Unscrew the four Dzus mount screws on the NMC front panel by turning them 1/4 turn counterclockwise with a flat blade screwdriver.

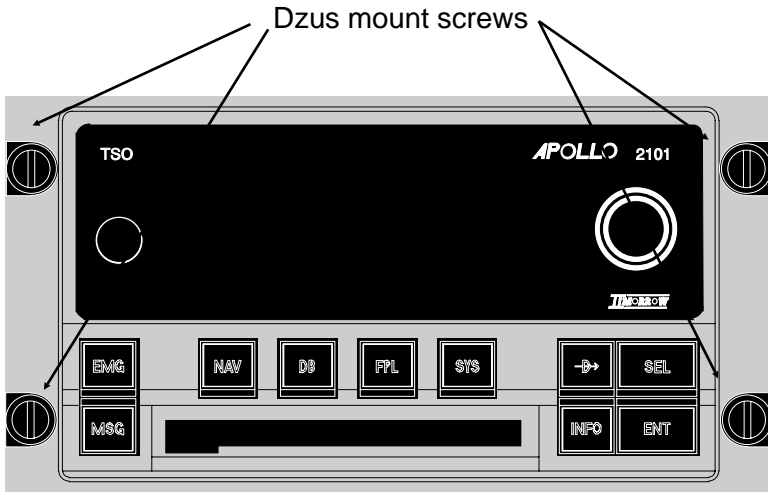


Figure 2 - Apollo NMS Dzus Mount Front Panel

2. Pull the unit out of the panel. Disconnect the avionics connector, ground wires, and air flow tube from the back of the unit.

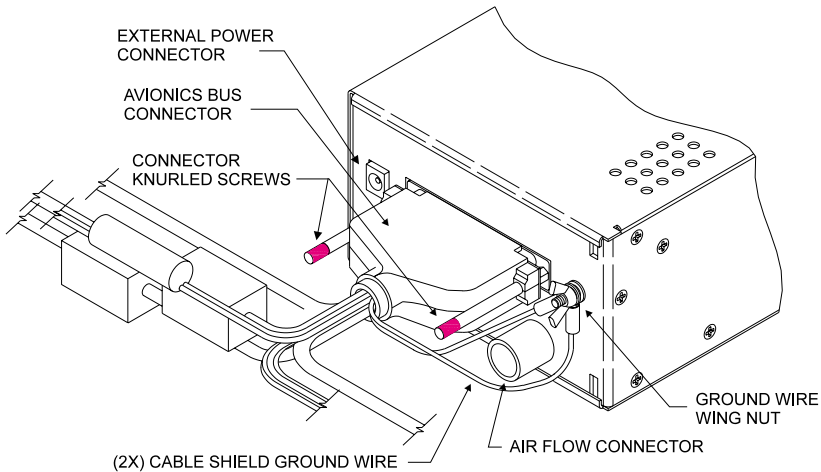


Figure 4 - Apollo NMC Dzus Mount Rear Connections

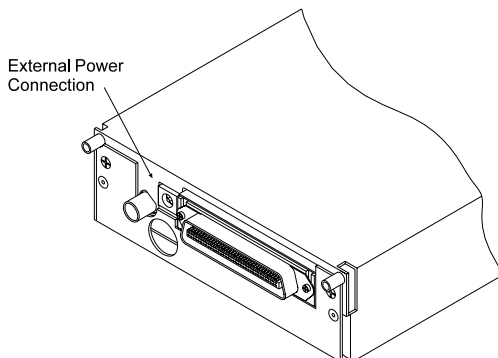


Figure 3 - Panel Mount Apollo NMC Rear Connections

### Connecting the Power Supply

The following procedure is used to connect the NMC to the external power supply. The NMC must be removed from your aircraft to use the Flight Simulator.

1. Remove the NMC from the aircraft.
2. Plug the external power supply into a 120 VAC socket.
3. Insert the power cord into the power connector shown in Figure 3 or 4.

## Starting the Flight Simulation

The following procedure is used to start the flight simulation. It is recommended that you have a data card properly inserted into the data card slot so you can use the appropriate functions.

### Action

1.

### Explanation

Push in or turn the power switch.

```
APOLLO NMC
BY II MORROW
```

NAV

The owner name is displayed for approximately 2 seconds. If you have not entered your name, the display will read “Property of: No Name Entered”

```
PROPERTY OF :
WILBUR
WRIGHT
```

NAV

The data card information is displayed for approximately 3 seconds.

```
WEST NORTHAM DB
DATE : 05/30/99
VERSION: 1.11
```

NAV

**Starting the Flight Simulation (continued)**

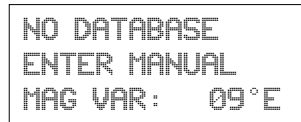
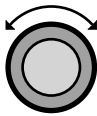
- 2. (Only if a data card is not installed)

If no data card is installed, the magnetic variation must be entered manually. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired magnetic variation.



NAV

Turn the **Large** knob to make the variation direction flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display “E” or “W.” Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed magnetic variation.



NAV

If you have changed the default (factory) airspace alert settings, the following display appears for approximately 3 seconds.



NAV



## Starting the Flight Simulation (continued)

If you have turned the airspace alerts off, the following display appears for approximately 3 seconds.

```
AIRSPACE
SETTINGS ARE OFF
```

If you have changed the Emergency Search (runway limits) settings, the following display appears for approximately 3 seconds.

```
EMERGENCY SEARCH
SETTINGS ARE
NON-STANDARD
```

NAV

3. (Only if adjusting the Date/Time)

SEL

The date and time are displayed for confirmation. The time setting is displayed as UTC (Universal Coordinated Time - formerly Greenwich Mean Time). If the date and time are incorrect, press the **SEL** button to activate editing.

```
DATE : 06 MAY 99
TIME : 11:18 UTC
```

NAV

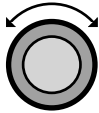
## Starting the Flight Simulation (continued)



Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired date.

```
DATE: 09 MAY 99
TIME: 11:18 UTC
```

NAV



Turn the **Large** knob to make the next information to change flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired information. Repeat as necessary to edit the Time and Date.



```
DATE: 09 JUN 99
TIME: 11:18 UTC
```

NAV



Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed time and date. The power-up sequence will continue.

```
FLIGHT SIMULATOR
NOT FOR FLIGHT
PRESS SEL
```

NAV

## Starting the Flight Simulation (continued)

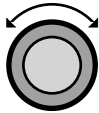
4.



Pressing **SEL** activates editing. This display is used to enter a ground speed and altitude to be used during the flight simulation. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired ground speed.

```
SIMULATOR SETUPS
GR SPEED 200KTS
ALTITUDE 3500FT
```

NAV



Turn the **Large** knob to make the altitude value flash. Turn the **Small** knob to display the desired altitude.

```
SIMULATOR SETUPS
GR SPEED 240KTS
ALTITUDE 4000FT
```

NAV



Pressing **ENT** enters the displayed ground speed and altitude values and starts the flight simulation. The NMC is placed in NAV mode, and a simulated GPS sensor begins tracking your position from the first FROM waypoint in the Active flight plan.

```
ETE: AAP 01:23
 0.01
BRG 090 156NM
```

NAV

## Flight Simulator Operations

Once you've started the flight simulator, you may practice the various operating procedures, such as activating flight plans, entering Direct-To courses, and inserting/deleting/changing waypoints in the Active flight plan. The simulator is also useful for planning purposes; you may create and edit flight plans in the comfort of your office or home. Changes made to flight plans and waypoints while the simulator is running are retained when the NMC is reinstalled in the aircraft.

### After the NMC is Re-Installed in the Aircraft

To acquire a position, the system must "know" its approximate location and, if using GPS sensor(s), the UTC time. After using the Flight Simulator, the NMC "remembers" the last simulated location it was at when the power was turned off. At power-up, the NMC will use this location in trying to acquire signals. **When the Apollo NMC has been re-installed into the aircraft, you may be required to enter the location and time.** Refer to the *Power-Up Sequence* section for details.

# **Operating Manual Supplement for the Apollo 2002/2102 Keypad**

These pages supplement your Apollo NMC Operating Manual and includes information for use with the Apollo 2002/2102 Keypads.

Place these pages in the rear portion of your NMC Operating Manual behind the tab labeled “Supplements, Other.”

P/N 560-0168-00

NAVNET, Apollo, and II Morrow are registered trademarks of II Morrow Inc.

© 1995 by II Morrow Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the U.S.A.

II Morrow Inc.  
Consumer Products Division  
2345 Turner Rd., S.E.  
Salem, OR 97302

**II MORROW**  
VISIONARY THINKING TODAY



1-800-525-6726 (USA)  
1-800-654-3415 (Canada)  
(503) 391-3411 (International)  
FAX (503) 364-2138

## History of Revisions

January 1996

Original Release

## Ordering Information

To receive additional copies of this document, order part #560-0168-00, *NMC Operating Manual Supplement for the Apollo 2002 Keypad*. The Apollo NMC Operating Manual is part # 560-0164.

## Warranty Information

The Apollo 2002/2102 Keypads carry the same II Morrow limited warranty as your Navigation Management Computer. Refer to the terms and conditions on your warranty card for specific information.

# Operating Manual Supplement for the Apollo 2002/2102 Keypads

The Apollo 2002/2102 keypad is a small, Dzus rail-mounted unit designed for use with Apollo Dzus-mount Navigation Management Computers (NMC). The keypad provides a fast, easy method for entering data into your NMC. The keypad allows a convenient way to enter or edit single characters, such as in waypoint names.

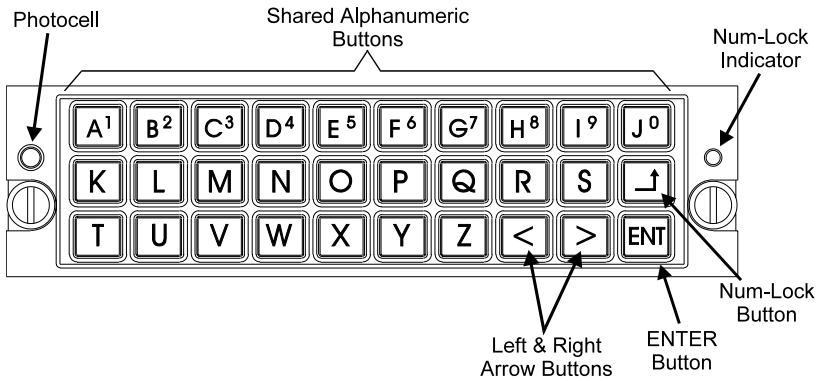
## Using the Keypad

The left and right arrow buttons serve the same function as the large knob on the NMC to choose which character on the display will flash. The keypad cannot be used to scroll through top-level displays for each mode; you must use the Large knob on the NMC.

When the desired character on the NMC flashes, use the keypad to enter the appropriate letter or numeric character. The NMC will only allow the entry of characters that you could also have selected with the Small knob for any given function. For instance, if a number value is flashing, you can only enter a number. A letter would not be allowed. When the NMC accepts a character, the next character to the right will flash. This allows you to use the keypad to continue changing other characters without turning the knobs on the NMC.

The **ENT** button on the keypad serves the same function as on the front panel of the NMC. Press the **ENT** button to save the entered characters.

The keypad can send alpha characters A to Z and numeric characters 0 to 9. The buttons on the top row for letters A to J are shared with the numbers 0 to 9. The **UP** arrow (**NUM-LOCK**) button on the right side of the keypad allows you to select between entering numbers or letters on the top row. After you press the **NUM-LOCK** button the Num-Lock indicator lights to indicate that numbers will be selected when a button on the top row is pressed. Press the **NUM-LOCK** button again to allow entry of letters and the indicator light will be off. If the keypad is used on a strictly numeric field, the A-J keys are automatically changed to 0-9. All other keys become 0.



Buttons on the keypad are backlit for easy viewing in low light conditions. Backlight intensity is controlled by a photocell on the front panel of the keypad.

### Waypoint Retriever Operation

While you are searching for waypoints, the keypad uses shortcuts for selecting waypoint types. Pressing the letter on the keypad will select the following waypoint types as shown below:

| Press this Keypad Letter | Waypoint Item Selected            |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| "L"                      | Airport (LFAC - Landing Facility) |
| "I"                      | Intersection *                    |
| "V"                      | VOR                               |
| "N"                      | NDB                               |
| "R"                      | Runways, if in your database      |

\* Intersections will be displayed as INT(x), where "x" is the database type. Pressing "I" will take you to the Intersection waypoint type. You then turn the **Large** knob to move to the identifier field. Pressing the letter that is displayed between the parantheses will take you directly to the identifier field.



**INDEX****!**

2002/2102 Keypad . . . . . 1

**A**

Active Status Option . . . . . 144

Air Data Sensor . . . . . 174

Airport Database . . . 109, 110

Airspace Alert

Settings . . . . . 181

Altimeter

Setting . . . . . 87

Altimeter Setting . . . . . 89

Altitude Assist . . . . . 91

Altimeter Setting . . . . . 87

Auto Descent . . . . . 93, 98

GPS Altitude Calibration 87

Sensor Information . . . 220

Setting/Editing . . . . . 90

Altitude Buffer

Setting/Editing . . . . . 90

Altitude Encoder . . . . . 178

Altitude Hold

Starting/Stopping . . . . . 91

Altitude Sensor . . . . . 87

Approach

Checklist . . . . . 262

Final Approach Fix . . . 267

Initial Approach Fix . . . 266

Missed Approach Point 270

Procedures . . . . . 259

Arc Assist . . . . . 249

Auto Descent

Setting/Editing . . . . . 93

Starting/Stopping . . . . . 98

Auto Nav Scroll . . . . . 79

Time Setting . . . . . 185

Auto-Descent . . . . . 95

**B**

Barometric pressure . . . . . 89

Barometric Pressure . . . . . 206

Basic Concepts . . . . . 1

Battery replacement . . . . . 313

Buffer Altitude . . . . . 91

Buttons . . . . . 3

**C**

CDI Scaling

Automatic . . . . . 199

CEP . . . . . 328

Controls

Direct-To Button . . . . . 3

ENT Button . . . . . 3

INFO Button . . . . . 3

Large Knob . . . . . 2

power switch . . . . . 2

Small Knob . . . . . 3

Countdown Timer . . . . . 102

**D**

Database

Intersection . . . . . 109

Database Mode . . . . 4, 107, 108

Organization . . . . . 108

Databases . . . 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114

Airport . . . . . 109

Displays . . . . . 112

Information . . . . . 110

Intersection . . . . . 109

- NDB . . . . . 109
- User . . . . . 109
- VOR . . . . . 109
- Datacard
  - Description . . . . . 5
- DB Mode
  - Database Information . . . . . 110
  - Description . . . . . 4
  - Organization . . . . . 108
- DB Mode Procedures 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120
  - Retrieving a Waypoint by City/Facility Name . . . . . 118
  - Retrieving a Waypoint by Identifier . . . . . 115
  - User Waypoints . . . . . 127
  - Waypoint Comments . . . . . 121
  - Waypoint Information . . . . . 121
  - Waypoint Retrieval . . . . . 115
- Default NAV Displays . . . . . 68
- Direct Navigation . . . . . 9
  - Procedure . . . . . 10
- Direct To button . . . . . 3
- Direct To Navigation . . . . . 30
- Direct-TO
  - Editing . . . . . 198
  - Entering . . . . . 197
- Display Test
  - Activation . . . . . 207
- Display Units . . . . . 196
- Displays
  - LED Display . . . . . 2
  - Sub-page Indicator . . . . . 3
- Distance to waypoint . . . . . 103
- DME Arc . . . . . 249
- Dzus Mount . . . . . 333
- E**
- Editing
  - Display description . . . . . 7
- Emergency Mode . . . . . 4
- Emergency Search . . . . . 20, 30
- EMG Displays . . . . . 27
- EMG Mode . . . . . 25
  - Description . . . . . 4
  - Displays . . . . . 27
  - Organization . . . . . 26
- EMG Mode Procedures
  - Runway Limits, Setting . . . . . 36
- Ending Altitude . . . . . 95
- ENT button . . . . . 3
- Ephemeris . . . . . 328
- ETA to waypoint . . . . . 104
- ETE to waypoint . . . . . 103
- F**
- Factory assistance . . . . . 318
- Features . . . . . 5
- First Flight . . . . . 9
  - Navigation Displays . . . . . 13
- Flight Plan
  - Direct TO . . . . . 159
  - Editing . . . . . 159
  - Inserting and Editing . . . . . 145
  - Interrupting . . . . . 106
  - Leg pages . . . . . 159
  - Manual leg selection . . . . . 147
  - Summary Options . . . . . 154
  - Updating . . . . . 148, 159
  - Updating information . . . . . 148

- Using comments . . . . . 151
- Flight Plan Mode . . . . . 5
- Flight Plans
  - Creating . . . . . 144
  - Description . . . . . 142
- Flight Simulation . . . . . 335
- Flight Simulator . . . . . 331
- Flight Timer Trigger Speed
  - Editing . . . . . 195
- FPL Mode
  - Description . . . . . 5
  - Flight Plans . . . . . 143
  - Organization . . . . . 141
- From/To/Next Page . . . . . 104
  - Deleting Waypoints . . . . . 106
  - Sequencing . . . . . 106
- From/To/Next Wpt
  - Inserting & Editing . . . . . 104
- Fuel Measure Units
  - Selection . . . . . 205
- Fuel Sensor . . . . . 176
- G**
- GDOP . . . . . 329
- Glossary 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326
- GPS
  - Accuracy . . . . . 328
  - Reference . . . . . 327
  - Satellite Status . . . . . 173
  - Status . . . . . 173
- GPS Altitude
  - Calibration . . . . . 87
- GPS Status . . . . . 172
- GRI
  - Manual Selection . . . . . 215
  - Triad Manual Selection . . . . . 216
- H**
- Hold Altitude
  - Setting/Editing . . . . . 90
- Hold/Continue . . . . . 106
- I**
- Intersection Database . . . . . 111
- Introduction to Primary Oceanic/Remote Airspaces 301, 302, 303, 304
- K**
- Keypad . . . . . 1
- Knobs . . . . . 2
- L**
- Large Knob . . . . . 2
- LED Display . . . . . 2
- Local Altimeter Setting . . . . . 206
- Loran Sensor . . . . . 214, 216, 218
- Loran Stations
  - Manual Selection . . . . . 216
- M**
- Magnetic Variation
  - Manual Entry . . . . . 191
- Manual air speed . . . . . 101
- Message Mode . . . . . 4
- Messages
  - Displays . . . . . 39
  - Viewing . . . . . 41
- Miscellaneous Sensor . . . . . 219, 220
  - Displaying Information . . . . . 220
- Miscellaneous Sensors . . . . . 174
- Modes . . . . . 4
  - Database . . . . . 107, 108

- DB Mode ······ 4
- EMG Mode ······ 4, 25
- FPL Mode ······ 5, 141
- MSG Mode ······ 4
- NAV Mode ······ 4, 61, 62
- SYS Mode ······ 5
- System Mode ······ 161
- MSG Mode
  - Description ······ 4
  - Message Displays ······ 39
  - SUA Information ······ 58
- MSG Mode Procedures
  - Viewing Messages ······ 41
- N**
- Nav Displays
  - Customizing ······ 186
  - Eight Character Items ······ 70
  - Restoring Default ······ 190
  - Restoring Defaults ······ 190
- NAV Displays
  - Default ······ 13
  - Sixteen Character Items ······ 71
- Nav Info Sub-State ······ 164
- NAV Mode ······ 61, 62
  - 16 Character Items ······ 71
  - 8 Character Items ······ 70
  - Description ······ 4
  - Displaying ······ 79
  - Displays · 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78
  - NAV Displays 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78
- Organization ······ 62
- Procedures ······ 79
- Sub-Displays ······ 68
- Nav Mode Procedures
  - Nav Information Displaying ······ 79
- NAV Mode Procedures
  - Altimeter Setting ······ 87
  - GPS Altitude Calibration 87
  - Present Position Displaying ······ 80
- Navigation Displays ······ 13
- Navigation Information ······ 179
  - Default Navigation Displays ······ 13
  - Eight Character Items ······ 70
  - Sixteen Character Items ······ 71
- Navigation Mode ······ 4
- NAVNET ······ 1
- NDB Database ······ 109, 111
- Nearest Waypoint
  - Direct Navigation To ······ 30
  - Search/Display ······ 30
- NMC ······ 1
- NMS ······ 1
- O**
- Operating Logic ······ 7
  - Character Editing ······ 8
  - Editing ······ 7
  - Field Editing ······ 8
  - Waypoint Retriever ······ 7
- Organization
  - NAV Mode ······ 62
- Organization Charts

- DB Mode . . . . . 108
- EMG Mode . . . . . 26
- Owner information . . . . . 209
- Owner Information
  - Entering . . . . . 209
- Owner name . . . . . 18
- Owner Name . . . . . 209
- P**
- Parallel Course Offset
  - Activating/Deactivating . . . . . 99
- Password . . . . . 209
- Position Fix . . . . . 330
- Position Sensor . . . . . 213
  - Selection . . . . . 81
  - Manual GRI Selection . . . . . 215
  - Selection . . . . . 81, 82
- Position Sensors . . . . . 170
  - Displaying Information . . . . . 214
  - Manual Triad Selection . . . . . 216
- Power Supply . . . . . 334
- Power Switch . . . . . 2
- Power Up . . . . . 9
- Power-Up Sequence . . . . . 15
- Present position . . . . . 80
- Present Position
  - Displaying . . . . . 80
- R**
- RAIM . . . . . 64
  - Editing . . . . . 84
- Re-Installing the NMC . . . . . 340
- Removal . . . . . 332, 333
- Runway Limits . . . . . 36
- S**
- Searching Around A Waypoint . . . . . 33
- SEL button . . . . . 3
- Selective Availability . . . . . 329
- Self Test . . . . . 16
- Setting Display Units . . . . . 196
- Small Knob . . . . . 3
- Software and Database Versions
  - Displaying . . . . . 208
- Special Use Airspace . . . . . 19, 58
- Status Options
  - Active . . . . . 144
- SUA Information
  - Displaying . . . . . 58
- SYS Mode
  - Description . . . . . 5
- SYS Mode Displays . . . . . 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178
  - System Info Sub-State . . . . . 167
  - Top Level . . . . . 163
- SYS Mode Procedures
  - Display Test Activation . . . . . 207
  - Software and Database Versions Display . . . . . 208
- System Info
  - Time & Date . . . . . 203
- System Info displays . . . . . 167
- System Info Sub-State
  - Display Test Activation . . . . . 207
  - Software and Database Versions Displaying . . . . . 208
- System Information . . . . . 201
- System Mode . . . . . 5
  - Description . . . . . 161

|                            |          |                             |     |
|----------------------------|----------|-----------------------------|-----|
| Organization · · · · ·     | 162      | Waypoints                   |     |
| <b>T</b>                   |          | Displays · · · · ·          | 112 |
| Time and Date              |          | What is Primary Oceanic · · | 301 |
| Setting · · · · ·          | 203      |                             |     |
| Triads                     |          |                             |     |
| Manual Selection · · ·     | 216      |                             |     |
| Troubleshooting · · · · ·  | 313      |                             |     |
| In-Flight · · · · ·        | 314      |                             |     |
| On The Ground · · · ·      | 316      |                             |     |
| <b>U</b>                   |          |                             |     |
| User Database · · · · ·    | 109, 111 |                             |     |
| User Waypoints · · · · ·   | 127      |                             |     |
| Creating · · · · ·         | 130      |                             |     |
| Creating · · · · ·         | 127      |                             |     |
| Deleting · · · · ·         | 139      |                             |     |
| Editing · · · · ·          | 135      |                             |     |
| <b>V</b>                   |          |                             |     |
| Viewing Messages · · · · · | 41       |                             |     |
| VOR Database · · · · ·     | 109, 111 |                             |     |
| <b>W</b>                   |          |                             |     |
| Waypoint                   |          |                             |     |
| Searching · · · · ·        | 33       |                             |     |
| Waypoint Comments          |          |                             |     |
| Displaying · · · · ·       | 125      |                             |     |
| Waypoint Comments · · · ·  | 121      |                             |     |
| Deleting · · · · ·         | 125      |                             |     |
| Entering/Editing · · · ·   | 122      |                             |     |
| Waypoint Information · · · | 121      |                             |     |
| Waypoint Retriever · · · · | 7, 115   |                             |     |
| Using Identifier · · · ·   | 115      |                             |     |
| Description · · · · ·      | 7        |                             |     |
| Using City/Facility Name   |          |                             |     |
| · · · · ·                  | 118      |                             |     |
| Using Identifier · · · ·   | 115      |                             |     |

# **II MORROW**

V I S I O N A R Y   T H I N K I N G   T O D A Y



© 1999 by II Morrow Inc.  
2345 Turner Rd., S.E.  
Salem, OR 97302  
U.S.A.

Phone (503) 581-8101  
1-800-525-6726  
FAX (503) 364-2138  
In Canada 1-800-654-3415

<http://www.iimorrow.com>

Part #560-0164-01b  
July 1999